



C3 CITROËN AIRCROSS



HANDBOOK

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Access to the Handbook



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyCitroën** application for smartphone.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the print edition appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the CITROËN website, in the "MyCitroën" section or at the following address:
<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.



Direct access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën C3 AIRCROSS.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document, you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle

Overview		Access		Lighting and visibility	
Instruments and controls	4	Remote control	41	Main lighting	80
		Keyless Entry and Starting	43	Lighting control	80
		Back-up procedures	45	Direction indicators (flashing)	81
		Doors	48	Automatic illumination of headlamps	82
		Boot	48	Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps	82
		Central locking	49	Parking lamps	82
Eco-driving	6	Alarm	51	Guide-me-home lighting	83
		Panoramic opening sunroof	53	Automatic headlamp dipping	83
		Anti-intrusion security	50	Automatic exterior welcome lighting	83
		Electric windows	55	Headlamp adjustment	85
				Cornering lighting	85
				Wiper control stalk	86
				Automatic windscreen wipers	88
Dashboard instruments		Ease of use and comfort		Safety	
Instrument panels	8	Front seats	57	General safety recommendations	90
Instrument panel displays	10	Rear seats	60	Hazard warning lamps	91
Warning and indicator lamps	10	Steering wheel adjustment	62	Horn	91
Indicators	25	Mirrors	63	Emergency or assistance call	91
Distance recorders	30	Ventilation	64	Electronic stability control (ESC)	93
Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen	31	Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning	65	Grip control	95
Monochrome screen C	32	Heating/Manual air conditioning	66	Hill Assist Descent	97
Touch screen	33	Automatic air conditioning	67	Seat belts	98
Trip computer	37	Front demist – defrost	69	Airbags	102
Lighting dimmer	39	Recirculation of interior air	69	Child seats	105
Date and time adjustment	39	Heated windscreen	70	Deactivating the front passenger airbag	106
		Rear screen demist – defrost	70	ISOFIX mountings and child seats	112
		Boot lighting	70	i-Size mountings and child seats	115
		Front fittings	71	Child lock	117
		Rear fittings	75		
		Boot fittings	76		
		Courtesy lamps	78		
		Interior mood lighting	79		

679

Audio and telematics

Alphabetical index

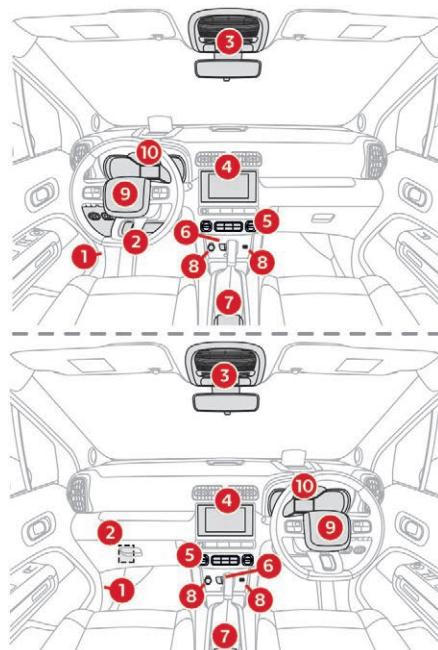
8

In the event of a breakdown



3

Instruments and controls

**1**

Bonnet release

2

Dashboard fuses

3

Courtesy lamp
Warning lamp display for the seat belts and front passenger airbag
Panoramic opening sunroof controls
Rear view mirror
Emergency and assistance call buttons

4

Monochrome screen with audio system
Touch screen with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav

5

Ventilation
Heating
Manual air conditioning
Automatic air conditioning
Front demist/defrost
Rear screen demist/defrost

6

Stop & Start button
Gearbox controls

7

Parking brake

8

USB port
12 V socket

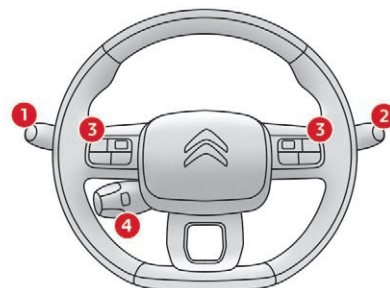
9

Horn

10

Instrument panel

Steering mounted controls

**1**

External lighting/direction indicator control stalk

2

Wiper/screenwash/trip computer control stalk

3

Audio system adjustment controls

4

Speed limiter controls/cruise control



Side switch panel



Reinitialisation of the tyre under-inflation detection



Deactivation of Stop & Start



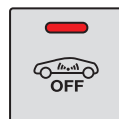
Activation of the heated windscreen



Lane departure warning system



Electric child lock



Deactivation of the interior volumetric, perimeter and anti-tilt monitoring



Parking assistance



Head-up display



Manual headlamp beam height adjustment



Central switch panel



Hazard warning lamps



Locking/Unlocking from inside



Grip control



Activation/Deactivation of Hill Assist Descent

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. When accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat control as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to make your vehicle's level of nitrogen oxide emissions compliant to the standard.

When refuelling, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle, to avoid any overflow.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

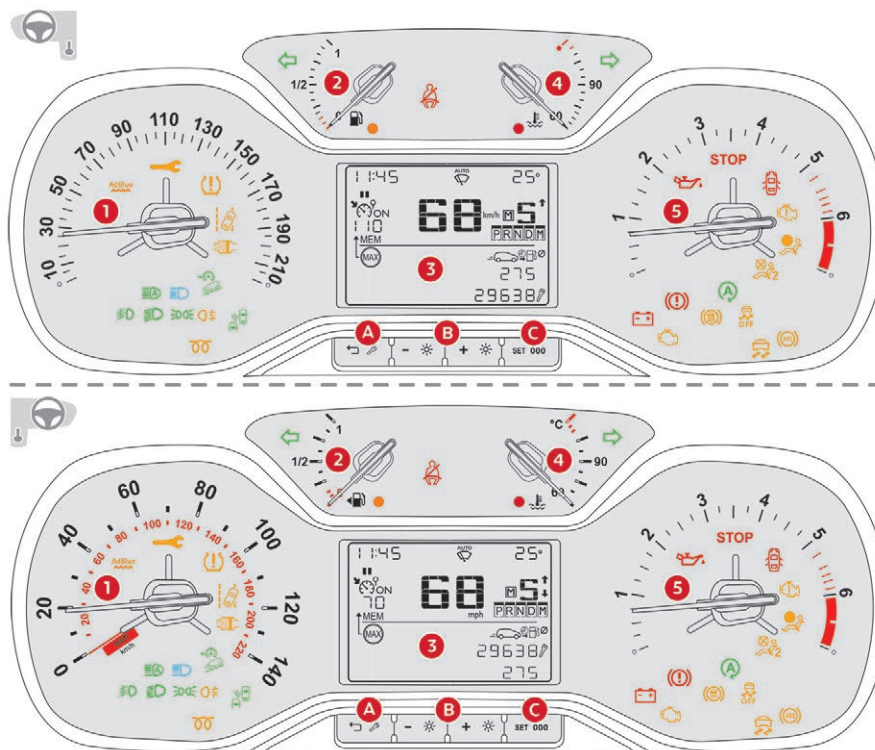
Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after approximately the first 1,850 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

LCD text instrument panel



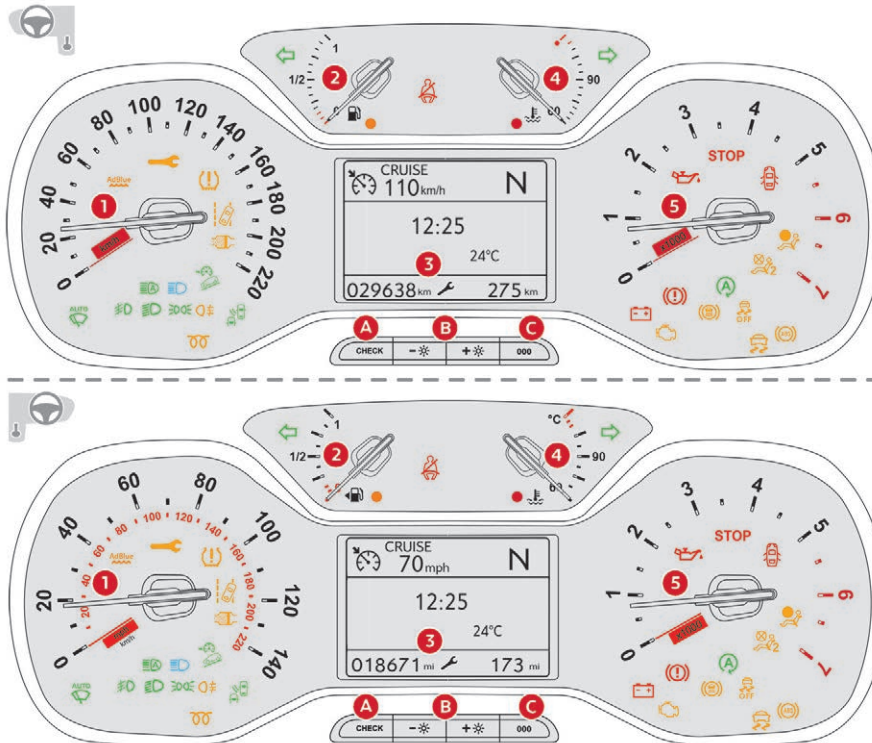
Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Fuel level indicator.
3. Display screen.
4. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.
5. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

Control buttons

- A. Resetting the service indicator.
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.
- B. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.
Depending on version: entry in the configuration menu (long press), validation of a choice (short press).

Matrix instrument panel



Dials

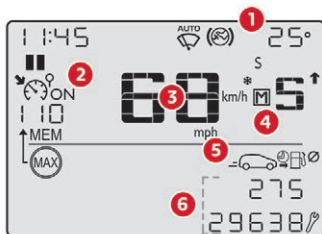
1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Fuel level indicator.
3. Display screen.
4. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.
5. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

Control buttons

- A. Resetting the service indicator.
Alert log display.
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Tyre pressure status information display.
- B. General lighting dimmer.
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.

Instrument panel displays

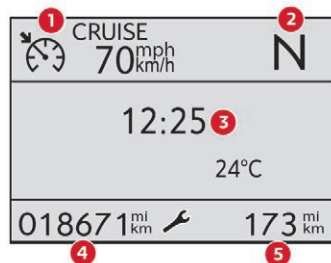
LCD text instrument panel



1. External temperature.
2. Speed limiter or cruise control settings. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Gear efficiency indicator and/or selector position, gear and Sport and Snow modes with an automatic gearbox.
5. Trip computer and Stop & Start time counter.
6. Display area: trip distance recorder (km or miles), service indicator or range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (km or miles), total distance recorder, alert messages or state of functions.

If your vehicle does not have an audio system or a touch screen, you can also configure some equipment by using this display. For more information on **Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

Matrix instrument panel



1. Speed limiter or cruise control settings. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
2. Gear efficiency indicator and/or selector position, gear and Sport and Snow modes with an automatic gearbox.

3. Display area: alert messages or state of functions, trip computer, digital speedometer (km/h or mph), range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (km or miles), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km). These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
5. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual identifiers informing the driver that a system is in operation, switched off (on/off indicator lamps) or has developed a fault (warning lamp).

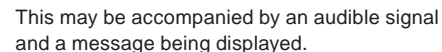
When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before driving refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes: fixed (continuous) or flashing. Only by relating the type of lighting to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred. In the event of a fault, the illumination of the warning lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

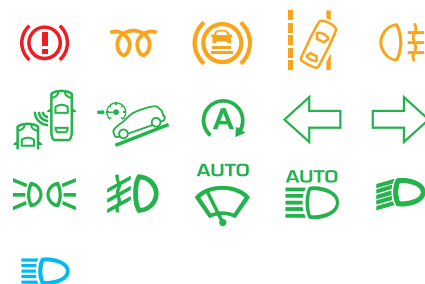


When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.






Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated message.






If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.






The lighting of one of the following indicator lamps confirms that the corresponding system is on.










If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.




Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations	
Red warning lamps				
	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault detected with the engine, the braking system, the power steering, etc., or a major electrical fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Parking brake	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the Parking brake , refer to the corresponding section.
	Brakes	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Top up with brake fluid approved by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
			The braking system is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + 	Brakes	Fixed, associated with the (orange) ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Door(s) open	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	Speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.	Close the door or boot.
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	Speed above 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.	
	Seat belt(s) not fastened/unfastened	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue into the buckle.
	Battery charge	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	The engine lubrication system is faulty.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Maximum coolant temperature	Fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.




Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
 + STOP	Engine diagnostic system	Fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	A major failure in the engine has been detected.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Orange warning/indicator lamps				
 + 	Engine diagnostic system	Fixed, associated with the Service warning lamp.	A minor failure in the engine has been detected.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine diagnostic system	Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
		Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Flashing.	The system is operating.	The system brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.	For more information on the Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake system, refer to the corresponding section.


Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	Fixed. The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking capabilities. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	Under-inflation	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. One or more wheels has insufficient pressure.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on Tyre under-inflation detection , refer to the corresponding section.
		Flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp. The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	Fixed. The button or the thumbwheel is operated and the indicator lamp comes on. The DSC/ASR is deactivated. DSC: dynamic stability control. ASR: anti-slip regulation.	Press the button or turn the thumbwheel to activate the DSC/ASR, its indicator lamp goes off. The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. If the system is deactivated, it is reactivated automatically once a speed of around 30 mph (50 km/h) is reached. For more information on the Electronic stability control (ESC) and, in particular, DSC/ASR, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
 Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
	Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 Airbags	Temporarily on.	This warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Fixed.	Either the airbag or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioner system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 Passenger's airbag system	Fixed.	<p>The control switch, located at the right side of the dashboard, is at the "OFF" position.</p> <p>The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the "OFF" position.</p> <p>The front passenger airbag is deactivated.</p> <p>You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).</p>	<p>Set the control to the "ON" position to activate the front passenger airbag.</p> <p>In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.</p>



Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Particle filter (Diesel)	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	This indicates that the particle filter is beginning to saturate.	Traffic conditions permitting, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. For more information on Checks and particularly those related to the particle filter, refer to the corresponding section.
		Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the particle filter's additive level being too low.	This indicates that the level in the additive tank is low.	Quickly arrange for a top-up by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop. For more information on Checking levels and particularly on the level of additive, refer to the corresponding section.
	Low fuel level	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on, around 5 litres of fuel remain in the tank. You are now starting to use the fuel reserve.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp reappears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message. This audible warning and this message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards "0". Tank capacity: approximately 45 litres. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	Presence of water in the Diesel fuel*	Fixed.	The Diesel filter contains water.	Risk of damaging the fuel injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.




* Depending on version






Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations	
	Lane departure warning system	Flashing (orange), accompanied by an audible signal.	A lane is being crossed, right side. A lane is being crossed, left side.	Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory. For more information, refer to the corresponding section.
		Fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The lane departure warning system is defective.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 370 miles (600 km) and 1,500 miles (2,400 km).	As soon as possible, top up the AdBlue®. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 370 miles (0 and 600 km).	You must top up the AdBlue® to avoid running out . You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must top up the AdBlue®. It is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.






Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 680 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	To avoid a breakdown , contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay .
		Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting prevention system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



 For topping up or for more information on the **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Service	Temporarily on, with a message displayed.	<p>One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.</p> <p>Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel.</p> <p>You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off).</p> <p>For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p>
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	<p>One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.</p> <p>Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p>
		Fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service spanner.	<p>The servicing interval has been exceeded.</p> <p>Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.</p> <p>Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.</p>

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Diesel engine pre-heating	Fixed.	When the ignition is switched on with a key in the ignition switch or a starting instruction is made using the "START/STOP" button, the engine temperature makes engine pre-heating necessary.	The period of illumination of the indicator lamp is determined by the climatic conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). With a key in the ignition switch, wait until the indicator lamp goes off before starting. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on the condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on the condition that the clutch pedal remains pressed with a manual gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	Rear foglamp	Fixed.	The rear foglamp has been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamp.
Green indicator lamps				
	Blind spot monitoring	Fixed.	The system has been activated.	For more information on the Blind spot monitoring system , refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Hill Assist Descent	Fixed.	The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).	Between 20 and 30 mph (35 and 50 km/h), the system is selected but not active. Reduce the speed of the vehicle.
		Flashing.	The system is regulating the speed of the vehicle.	The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent. For more information on the Hill Assist Descent function, refer to the corresponding section.
	Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, etc.) the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		Flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start , refer to the corresponding section.
	Left-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved up.	
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	

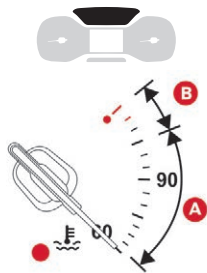
Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Front foglamps	Fixed.	The front foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the front foglamps.
	Automatic wiper	Fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down. Automatic front wiper is activated.	To deactivate automatic wiper, push the wiper control stalk down again or put the wiper control stalk in another position.
	Automatic headlamp dipping	Fixed.	The function has been activated via the Vehicle/Driving menu of the touch screen. The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	The camera, placed on the top of the windscreen, manages the main beam headlamps or dipped headlamps operation, according to the outside lighting and the driving conditions. For more information on the Automatic headlamp dipping , refer to the corresponding section.
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
Blue indicator lamps				
	Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk has been pulled towards you.	Pull the lighting control stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
Warning lamps visible in a display			
	Foot on brake	Fixed.	The brake pedal must be pressed. With an electronic gearbox, selector in position N , press the brake pedal to start the engine. With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, press the brake pedal before releasing the parking brake to unlock the selector and come out of position P . If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
		Flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on an incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats. Use the brake pedal and/or the parking brake.
	Automatic wiping	Fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down. Automatic front wiping is activated. To deactivate automatic wiping, operate the control stalk downwards or put the stalk into another position.

Indicators

Coolant temperature gauge

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.



With the engine running:



- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; this warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.



You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After first switching off the ignition, open the bonnet cautiously and check the coolant level.

Service indicator

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
 Service spanner	Fixed, temporary when the ignition is switched on.	When between 620 miles (1,000 km) and 1,860 miles (3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the distance recorder displays a line showing the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) before the next service is due. - an alert message indicates the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) as well as the period before the next service is due. <p>The service spanner disappears after a few seconds. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>
	Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	Less than 620 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due. - an alert message indicates the distance remaining as well as the period before the next service is due. <p>The service spanner remains on to show that a service is required very soon. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>

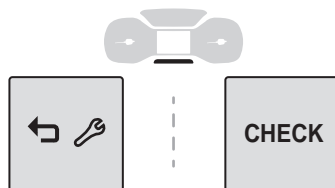
Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Service spanner	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	Service is overdue. The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on version: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder displays a line showing the distance travelled since service was due. The value is preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that service is overdue. The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.
		Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on, associated with the Service warning lamp.	Service is overdue for Diesel BlueHDi versions. The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on version: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder displays a line showing the distance travelled since service was due. The value is preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that service is overdue. The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.

i The distance indicated (in kilometres or miles) is calculated according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

Resetting the service indicator

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself, switch off the ignition:



- ☞ Press and hold this button.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.
- ☞ When the display indicates =0, release the button; the spanner disappears.

i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

☞ Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by the display of the "**Oil level correct**" message.

Oil level insufficient

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault

This is signalled by the display of the "**Oil level measurement invalid**" message on the instrument panel.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® liquid range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

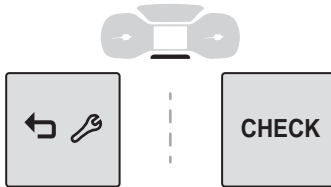
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of range in the instrument panel.



Pressing this button will temporarily display the remaining range.

With touch screen



☞ You can access the information via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, by selecting "**Driving functions**" then "**Diagnostic**".

Remaining range between 1,500 and 370 miles (2,400 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "NO START IN 900 miles" or "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, this message is displayed approximately every 200 miles (300 km) until the liquid has been topped up. The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible. It is recommended that you do not top up by more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

i For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and, in particular, on topping up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Range below 370 miles (600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "NO START IN 180 miles" or "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 180 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue fluid has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)** and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, together with an audible signal and the display of the message "NO START IN 0 miles" or "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

For more information on the **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! An engine immobiliser is activated automatically after you have driven a further 680 miles (1,100 km) following confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".

The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 680 and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, associated with an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "NO START IN 200 miles" or "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 200 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition. You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented



Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "NO START IN 0 miles" or "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started.

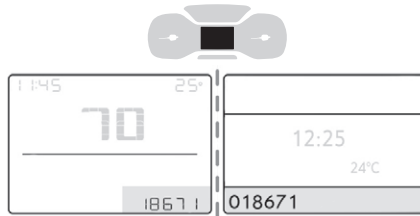
To be able to restart the engine, you must call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

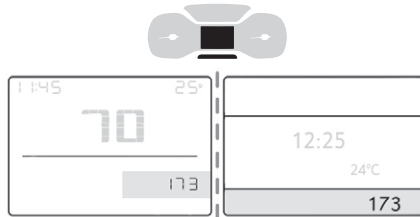
i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder



It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder



☞ With the ignition on, press the button until dashes appear.

Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen

If your vehicle does not have an audio system or a touch screen, you can still configure some equipment by using the **LCD text instrument panel** display.

Control buttons



SET 000 A long press of this button takes you to the configuration menu, a short press is used to confirm.

- ☼ Pressing one of these buttons lets you move in a menu or a list; or to change a value.

↩ ☞ Pressing this button takes you back up a level or cancels the current operation.

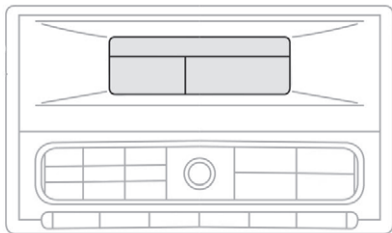
Display screen menus

- LIGHTING:
 - GUIDE LAMPS (Guide-me-home lighting).
 - DIR HEADLAMPS (Directional headlamps).
- DRIVE ASSIST:
 - COLLISION ALT (Automatic emergency braking).
 - VIGILANCE ALT (Fatigue Detection System).
 - ADVISED SPEED (Speed limit recognition).
- COMFORT:
 - REAR WIPE REV (Automatic windscreen wiper when reversing).

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Monochrome screen C

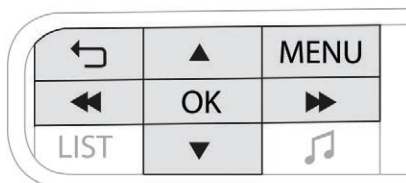
Displays on the screen



This displays the following information:

- the time,
- the date,
- the outside temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- visual parking sensor information,
- the audio source being listened to,
- telephone or hands-free kit information,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

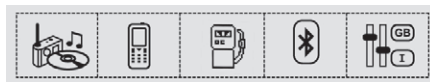
Controls



From your audio system, you can press:

- ☞ the MENU button for access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ the "◀" or "▶" buttons to change the value of a setting,
- ☞ the OK button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ the Back button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- ☞ Press the MENU button for access to the **main menu**:
 - "Multimedia",
 - "Telephone",
 - "Trip computer",

- "Connections",
 - "Personalisation-configuration".
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the OK button.

"Multimedia" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with the use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat). For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

"Telephone" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories. For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

"Trip computer" menu



This menu allows you to consult information concerning the status of the vehicle.

Warning log

It summarises the alert messages of the functions, displaying them on the screen.

"Connections" menu



With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be paired and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files). For more information on the "Connections" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Display configuration".

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows the following equipment to be activated/deactivated, depending on version and/or country of sale:

- **"Lighting"**:
 - "Directional headlamps",
 - "Guide-me-home headlamps",
 - "Welcome lighting".
- **"Comfort"**:
 - "Rear wipe in reverse gear".
- **"Driving assistance"**:
 - Auto. emergency braking,
 - Fatigue Detection System,
 - Speed recommendation.

For more information on the different equipment, refer to the corresponding sections.

Display configuration

This menu allows you to change the language used by the display from a defined list.

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display personalisation",
- "Choice of language",

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention with the vehicle stationary.

Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:

- the heating/air conditioning controls,
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information, and, depending on equipment, allows:
 - the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
 - the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice),
 - access to the internet services and navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.
Use is possible in all temperatures.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

Use the buttons on each side of the touch screen to access the menus, then use the buttons that appear on the touch screen.
Certain functions may be displayed over 1 or 2 pages.
To deactivate/activate a function, press OFF/ON.
To modify a setting (lighting duration, etc.) or access additional information, press the symbol for the function.

i After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.

OK

Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to return to the previous page.

Menus



Radio Media.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



Mirror Screen or Connected navigation*.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



Air conditioning.

Allows control of the settings for temperature, air flow, etc.



Telephone.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



Applications.

Allows the display of the connected services available.
See the "Audio and telematics" section.



Vehicle or Driving*.

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".



Volume control/mute.

See the 'Audio and telematics' section.

i Press with three fingers on the touch screen to display the menu carousel.

For more information on **Heating**, **Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.

* Depending on equipment

Upper bar

Certain information is always present in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Recall of the air conditioning information, and access to a simplified menu (temperature and air flow adjustment only).
- Summary of information from the **Radio Media**, **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions*.
- Notifications zone (texts and email)*.






- Access to **Configuration**.

* Depending on equipment

"Vehicle" menu/"Driving" menu

Vehicle settings tab

The functions are grouped into 3 families.

Families	Functions
Lighting 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Directional headlamps" activation/deactivation of the cornering lighting/directional headlamps. - "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of the automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of the exterior welcome lighting.
Comfort 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear.
Security 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Collision risk alert and automatic braking": activation/deactivation of the collision risk alert and automatic emergency braking. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit recognition.

i For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Driving functions tab

Function	Comments
Park Assist	Activation of the function.
Automatic headlamp dip	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Panoramic visual aid	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Stop & Start	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Parking sensors	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Traction control	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Blind spot sensors	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Under-inflation detection reset	Reset of the tyre under-inflation detection system.
Memorised speeds settings	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter or cruise control.
Diagnostic	Summary of current alerts.








i For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.


Configuration




The functions available via the upper bar are detailed in the table below. Some settings are accessible on a secondary page.

CITROËN Connect Nav

Button	Comments
	Theme.
	Audio settings.
	Turn off screen.
	System administration.
	Languages.
	Setting the date and time.
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.








	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
---	--

	Setting the date and time.
---	----------------------------

Trips **1** and **2** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **1** can be used for daily figures and trip **2** for monthly figures.

CITROËN Connect Radio

Button	Comments
	Turn off screen.
	Brightness adjustment.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Choice of units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Theme.
	Languages.
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.

Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

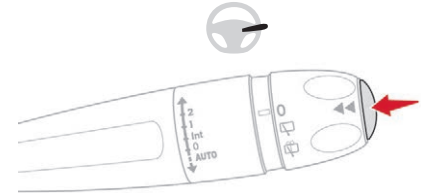
Data displays

They are displayed successively.

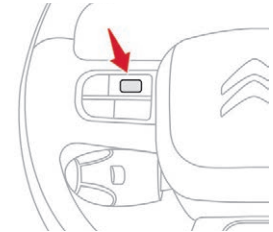
- Current information showing:
 - the daily mileage,
 - the range,
 - the current fuel consumption,
 - the Stop & Start time counter,
 - speed limit recognition information (depending on version).
- Trip **1** with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the first trip.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, a 2nd trip is available.

- Trip **2** with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the second trip.



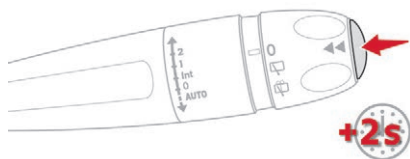
☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.



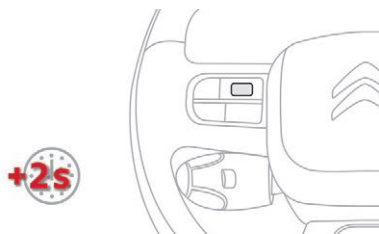
☞ Or, depending on equipment, press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel**.

Reset trip

With LCD text or matrix instrument panel

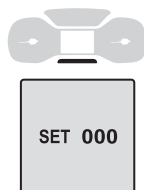


- When the trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.



- Or, depending on equipment, press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel** for more than two seconds.

With LCD text instrument panel



- When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button in the instrument panel for more than two seconds.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

- This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below 20 miles (30 km).

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

- If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated over the last few seconds.

- This function is only displayed above 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

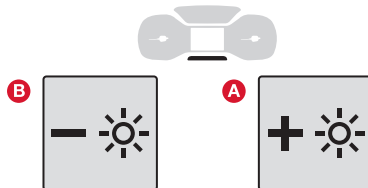
A time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Lighting dimmer

Allows manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and touch screen according to the outside lighting.

Only works when the vehicle lamps are on (except daytime running lamps) and in night mode.

Two buttons



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the mood lighting of the vehicle or button **B** to reduce it.
As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

Touch screen

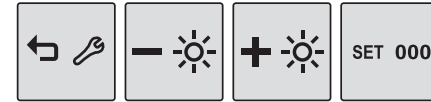


- In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".
- Adjust the brightness by using the arrows or by moving the cursor.

i The brightness can be set differently for day mode and night mode.

Date and time adjustment

Without audio system



You can adjust the date and time in the instrument panel display.

SET 000 ⓘ Hold this button down.



ⓘ Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

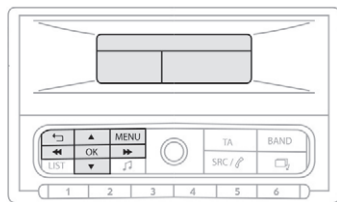
SET 000 ⓘ

Press this button briefly to confirm.



ⓘ Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to register the change.

With audio system



- ☞ Press the **MENU** button to access the main menu.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" line, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the setting to be changed and confirm it by pressing the **OK** button.
- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **OK** button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **OK** button to select the **OK** box and confirm or the **Back** button to cancel.

With CITROËN Connect Radio



- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu.

- ☞ Select **"System configuration"**.



- ☞ Select **"Date and time"**.

- ☞ Select **"Date"** or **"Time"**.
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"**.

- ☞ Select the **"Date"** or **"Time"** tab.
- ☞ Adjust the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"**.

Additional adjustments

You can choose:

- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To activate or deactivate the summer/winter time management function.
- To activate or deactivate synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

With CITROËN Connect Nav

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with GPS is deactivated.



- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu.

- ☞ Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



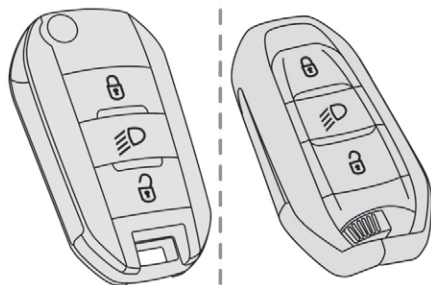
- ☞ Select **"Setting the time-date"**.

Remote control

General information

The key allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock.

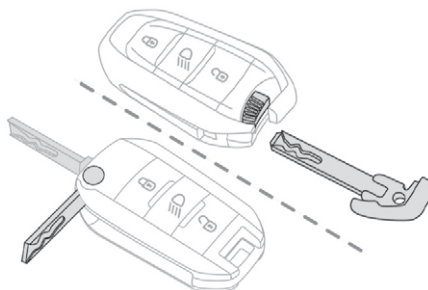
It also allows you to start or stop the engine.



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- locking/unlocking the boot,
- locking/unlocking the fuel filler flap,
- switching on the lighting remotely,
- folding/unfolding the door mirrors,
- activation/deactivation of the alarm,
- locating the vehicle,
- vehicle immobiliser.

Under normal conditions, it is recommended to use the remote control.



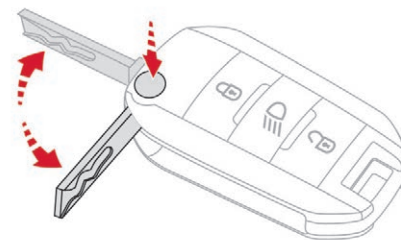
The key, integral with the remote control, can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- turning the manual child lock on or off,
- activating/deactivating the front passenger airbag,
- back-up door locking,
- switching on the ignition and starting/stopping the engine.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked or unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery etc.

For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

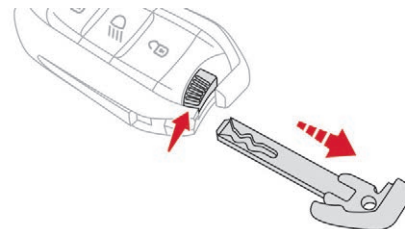
Ejecting the key



Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Press this button; the key is ejected from the housing.

To avoid damaging the mechanism, first press this button to fold it.



Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Pull on this button to remove the key from the housing.

To return it to the housing, first pull on this button.

Unlocking the vehicle



- ☞ Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

When the unlocking button is pressed, the flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



- ☞ Press this button.

When the locking button is pressed, the illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds indicates:

- locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- activation of the alarm for other versions.

i If any of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place. However, if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be totally activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and if no action is taken with the doors or with the boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm had been previously activated, it will be reactivated automatically.

The locking function also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard.

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light.

Deadlocking



- ☞ Press the button once to lock the vehicle.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

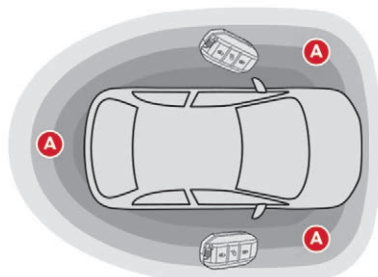
For versions without alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds on the second press of the locking button.



- ☞ Press this button.

The sidelamps and the dipped headlamps come on for 30 seconds. Pressing the button again before the end of this period switches the lamps off immediately.

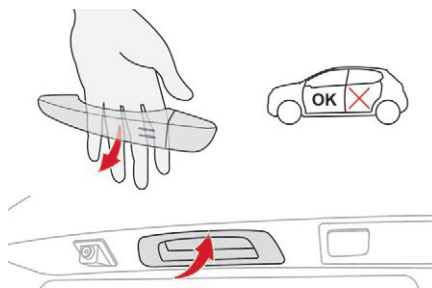
Keyless Entry and Starting



System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while keeping the electronic key on your person.

- i** The electronic key can also be used as a remote control.
For more information on the **Remote Control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle



- f** With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control.

- i** The flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
 - the unlocking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
 - the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

- !** For safety and theft protection purposes, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even if you are nearby.
It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

- !** Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

- i** If any of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
If, when locking the vehicle, any of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the vehicle is not locked and, if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be totally activated after about 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and if no action is taken with the doors or with the boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.

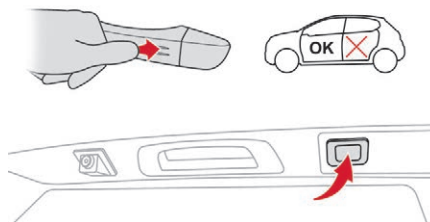
Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

! In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.

For more information on **Starting with Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



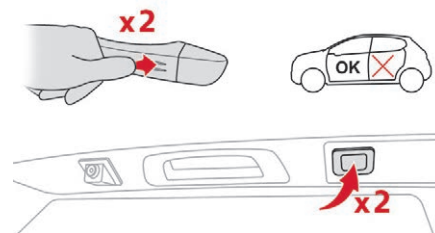
☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press with your finger or thumb on the door handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right).

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the keys is left inside the vehicle.

- i** The lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
- the locking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
 - the activation of the alarm for other versions.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press with your finger or thumb on the door handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right).

☞ Within five seconds, press the front door handle or the locking control on the tailgate (on the right) again to deadlock the vehicle.

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. The remote control may stop working and would have to be reinitialised. The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw away the remote control batteries, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

2

Back-up procedures

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

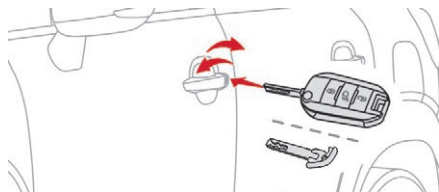
- remote control battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, you can also replace the remote control battery.

Refer to the corresponding section.

In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding section.



- ☞ Insert the key into the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.
- ☞ Turn the key to the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds confirms that the procedure has completed correctly.

i If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

i If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.

Without central locking

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

i In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Driver's door

- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

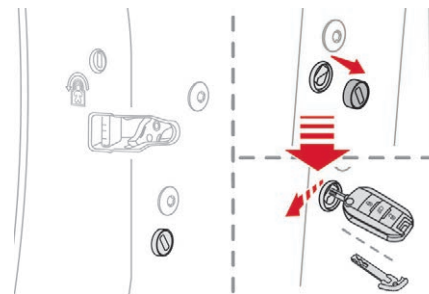
Unlocking a door

- ☞ Pull the interior opening control for the door.

Locking

- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.



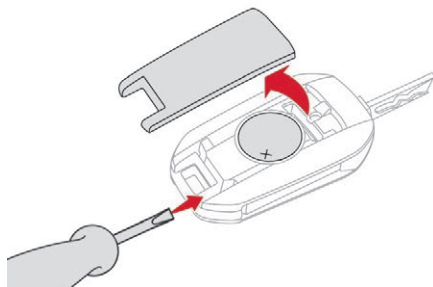
- ☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Without forcing, insert the key into the aperture; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message appears in the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.

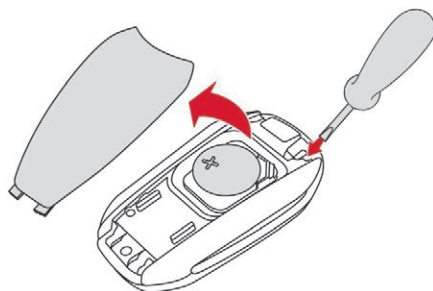
Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

Battery type: CR1620/3 volts.



Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.



- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.

- ☞ Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

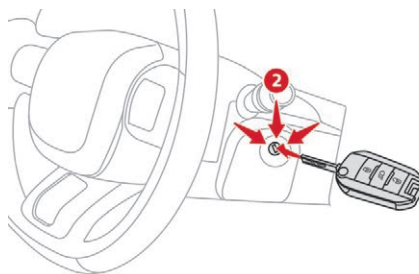
The remote control must be reinitialised after replacing the battery.

For more information on reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

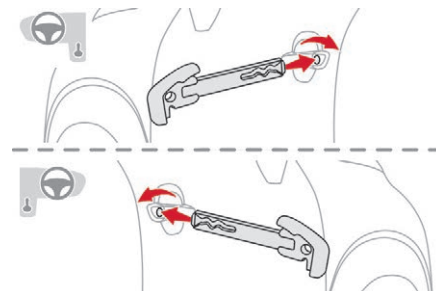


- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.

- ☞ Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

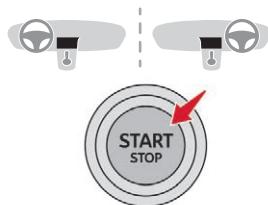


- ☞ Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.



- ☞ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.

- ☞ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox**, select position **P**, then firmly press the brake pedal.



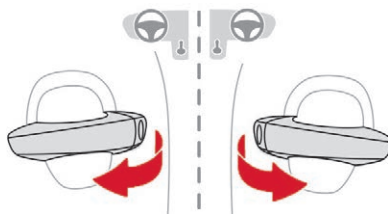
- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the **START/STOP** button.

The electronic key is now fully operational again.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors Opening

From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or holding the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

From inside



- ☞ Pull the interior control lever of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

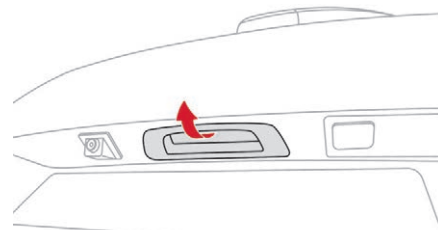
Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:



- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an audible signal for a few seconds.

Boot Opening



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- ☞ Lift the tailgate.

! In case of malfunction or difficulties in moving the tailgate when opening or closing, have it checked without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to ensure that the issue does not become worse and does not lead to the tailgate dropping rapidly and the risk of causing serious injuries.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



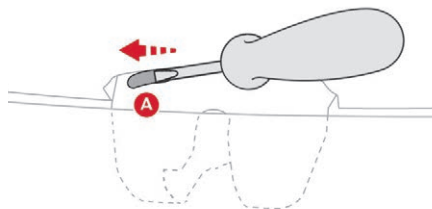
- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message for a few seconds.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

☞ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

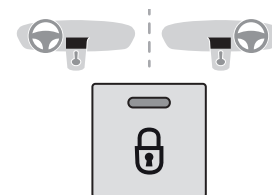
If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Central locking

This function allows the doors and boot to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.

Manual mode

Locking



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i If any of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

i When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.

For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If any of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

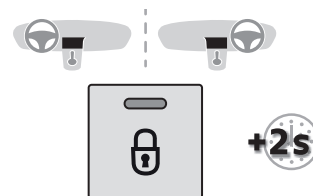


This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

i Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear. Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle. Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Activation/Deactivation



You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

- ☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

! Driving with the doors locked may render access for the emergency services difficult in an emergency.

i In the event of a serious impact, the doors and the boot unlock automatically.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- Perimeter monitoring

The system monitors the opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.

- Volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

! Self-protection function

The system checks for the disconnection of any of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.



For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.



☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control.

or

☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the button's indicator lamp flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following a command to lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds, the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot, etc.) is incorrectly closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation



☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.



The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and, within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.

- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be taken into account, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The button indicator lamp goes off.

- ☞ Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by the sound of the siren and flashing of the indicators for thirty seconds. The volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring functions remain active until the tenth successive time the alarm is triggered.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Remote control fault

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The button indicator lamp goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

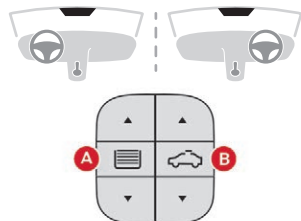
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the button indicator lamp indicates a fault in the system. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Panoramic opening sunroof

The panoramic sunroof and its blind are opened and closed using the buttons in the roof console.



- A. Blind control button.
- B. Sunroof control button.

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the fixed or mobile glass of the sunroof.

Design

Complete opening of the sunroof involves partly raising the mobile glass, then sliding it over the fixed glass.

Any intermediate position is possible.

Opening the roof involves opening the blind. By contrast, the blind can remain open when the roof is closed.

The control buttons for the sunroof and blind can be used:

- with the ignition on, if the state of charge of the battery is adequate,
- with the engine running,
- in STOP mode of Stop & Start,
- during the 45 seconds after switching off the ignition,
- during the 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.

Operating the sunroof

Opening



With the sunroof fully closed or partly raised:

- ☞ press and release the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to fully raise the sunroof.

With the sunroof opened beyond the raised position:

- ☞ press and release the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to open the sunroof.

With the sunroof partly or fully closed:

- ☞ press and release the rear of button **B** going beyond the point of resistance to fully open the sunroof.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

- ☞ If you press and hold the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance; the sunroof opens and stops when you release the button.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before opening. Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice – Risk of damage! Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

! Do not put your head or arms through the open sunroof when driving – Risk of serious injury!

Closing



With the sunroof partially or fully open:

☞ press and release the front of button **B** going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the sunroof.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

With the sunroof partially or fully open:

☞ press and release the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to close the sunroof to its raised position.

☞ press the front of button **B** again to fully close the sunroof.

With the sunroof fully or partly raised:

☞ press and release the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the sunroof.

☞ press and hold the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance; the sunroof closes and stops when you release the button.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

The anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof, the opening sunroof must be reinitialised:

☞ press the rear of button **B** until the sunroof is fully open,

☞ press and hold the rear of button **B** again for at least 3 seconds.

! Check the condition of the sunroof seals regularly (presence of dust or deposits, dead leaves, etc.).

If using a car wash, check that the roof is correctly closed in advance and keep the tip of the high-pressure lance at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

Operating the sunroof blind

The closing movement of the blind is limited by the position of the opening sunroof: the blind cannot be further forward than the front of the mobile glass.

Opening



☞ Press the rear of button **A** going beyond the point of resistance to fully open the blind.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

☞ If you press and hold the rear of button **A** without going beyond the point of resistance; the blind opens and stops when you release the button.

Closing



☞ Press the front of button **A** going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the blind.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

- ☞ Press and hold the front of button **A** without going beyond the point of resistance; the blind closes and stops when you release the button.

Anti-pinch system

If the blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the blind, the blind must be reinitialised:

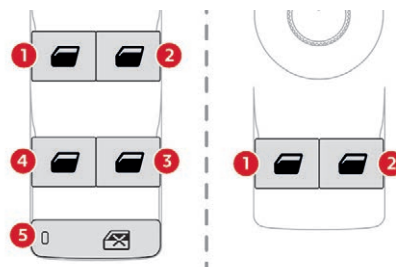
- ☞ press the rear of button **A** until the blind is fully open,
- ☞ press and hold the rear of button **A** again for at least 3 seconds.

i During simultaneous closing of the sunroof and the blind, if the blind catches up with the sunroof, the blind then suspends its movement and automatically resumes when the sunroof stops.

! Never leave the electronic key inside the vehicle if you get out of the vehicle, even for a short time.

If something is trapped when closing the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind. To do this, press the control button in question. The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly. Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear (depending on version).
4. Left-hand rear (depending on version).

5. Deactivation of the rear electric window controls (depending on version).

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch, without going past the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation of the front electric windows

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the resistance point: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Anti-pinch function of the front electric windows

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window during automatic closing, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed. The anti-pinch safety function is not active during this system activation operation.

Deactivating the rear electric windows (depending on version)



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the windows of the rear doors, irrespective of their position.

When the indicator is on, the rear controls are inhibited. When the indicator is off, the rear controls are active.

Reinitialisation the front electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the anti-pinch safety function must be reinitialised. The anti-pinch safety function is not active during these operations:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres with each press. Perform the operation again until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch upwards for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

! Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.

When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that no-one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

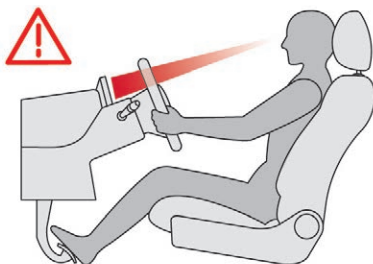
Front seats

! For safety reasons, the driver's seat must only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.

Correct driving position

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

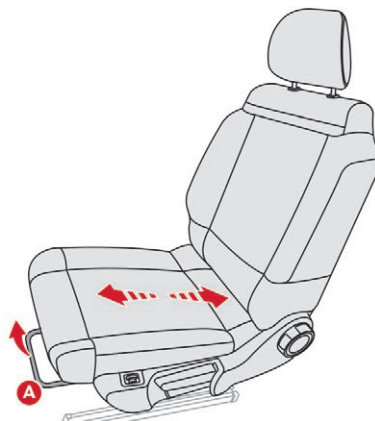
- height of the head restraint,
- backrest angle,
- seat cushion height,
- longitudinal position of the seat,
- height and reach of the steering wheel,
- interior and door mirrors.



! Once these adjustments have been made, check the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

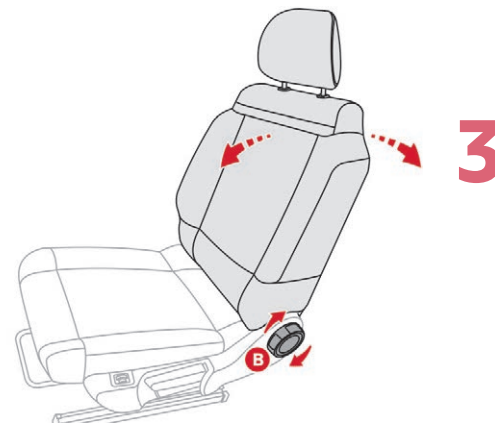
Settings

Longitudinal



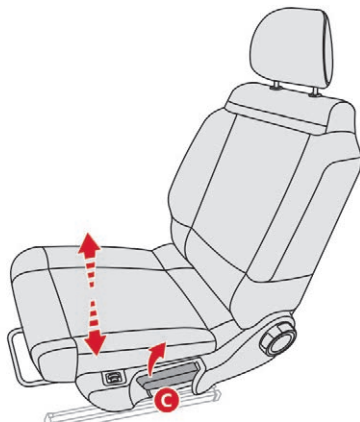
☞ Raise the control **A** and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Driver's seat backrest angle



☞ Turn the knob **B** to adjust the backrest.

Height (driver only)



- ☞ Pull the control **C** upwards to raise the seat or push it downwards to lower it, as many times as required, to obtain the desired position.

Passenger seat backrest angle

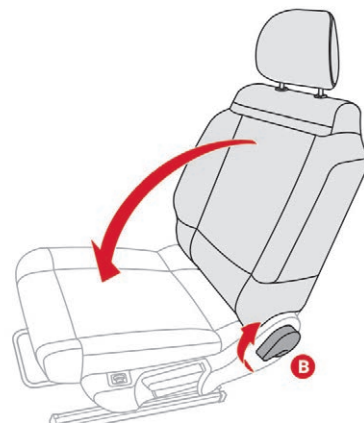


- ☞ Turn the knob **B** or pull control **B** up to adjust the backrest.
When the backrest is correctly inclined, release the control.

! To prevent the backrest from suddenly folding forwards and hitting you, hold the backrest with your back or hand while you move the control.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Passenger seat backrest table position



! Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.

- ☞ Place the head restraint in the low position.
- ☞ Pull control **B** fully forwards and tilt the backrest forwards.

To return to the normal position, guide the backrest backwards until it locks into place.

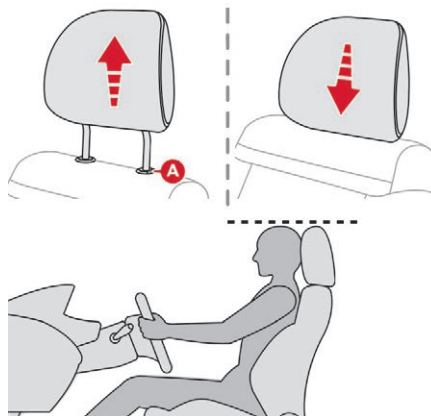
This position, together with that of the rear seats, allows you to transport long objects inside the vehicle.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. When the front passenger seat is fully folded, only the outer rear seat behind the driver can be occupied by a passenger.

! Do not place hard, heavy or sharp objects in the centre of the folded backrest to ensure that you do not damage rear lining behind the backrest. When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the folded backrest can turn into dangerous projectiles.

Front head restraints

Height adjustment



Upward:

- ☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

Downward:

- ☞ press the lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

! The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

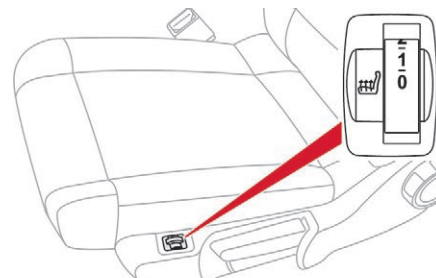
- ☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.
- ☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

- ☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
- ☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.
- ☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Heated seats



☞ With the engine running, use the adjustment knob to switch on and choose the heating level desired:

- 0: Off.
- 1: Low.
- 2: Medium.
- 3: High.

The front seats can be heated individually.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

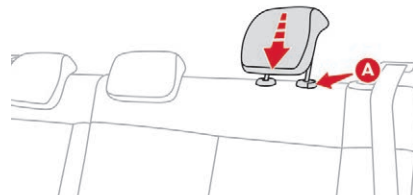
To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Rear seats

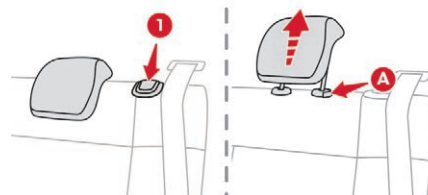
Bench seat with a fixed cushion or on rails (depending on version) and split folding backrests (2/3-1/3) to adapt the boot loading space.

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
☞ pull the head restraint fully up.
- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
☞ press lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.



The rear head restraints can be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ release the backrest using the control 1,
- ☞ tilt the backrest slightly forwards,
- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ stow the head restraint.

To refit a head restraint:

- ☞ introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest,
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press lug **A** to release the head restraint and then push the head restraint fully down.

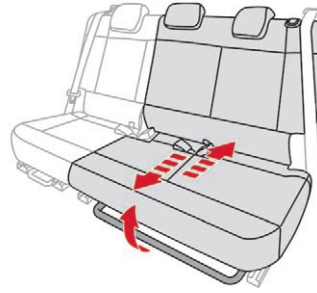
! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position.

The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Longitudinal seat adjustment (depending on version)

! Adjusting the seats must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

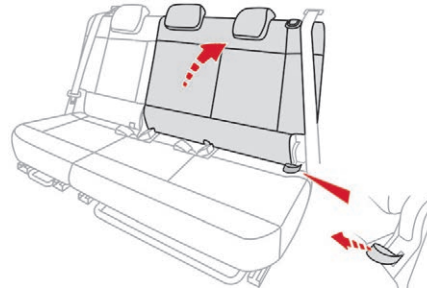
Each 2/3 -1/3 part can be adjusted individually.



- ☞ Raise the control and slide the bench seat forwards or backwards.

Adjusting the seat backrest angle (depending on version)

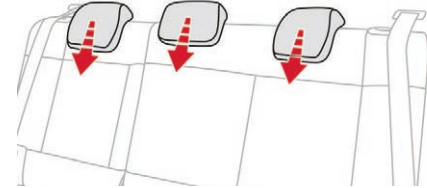
Several adjustment positions are available.



- ☞ Move the seat forward.
- ☞ Pull the strap forward then tilt the backrest to the desired position.

i Sit in the seat to perform the adjustments.

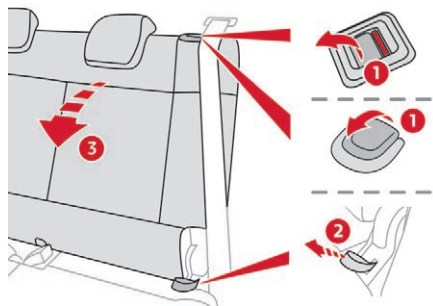
First steps:



- ☞ lower the head restraints,
- ☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
- ☞ pull the seats fully back (depending on version),
- ☞ check that nothing and no-one might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
- ☞ check that the outer seat belts are lying flat against the backrests and placed in the retaining hook.

Folding the backrests

! Adjusting the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.



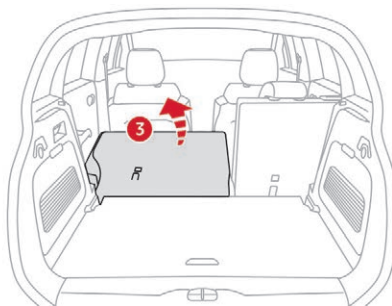
- ☞ Operate backrest release grip **1** or pull strap **2** (depending on version).
- ☞ Guide backrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

i Depending on version, if you use the strap, you do not need to guide backrest **3**.

i When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grip (depending on version).

Returning the backrests to their original position

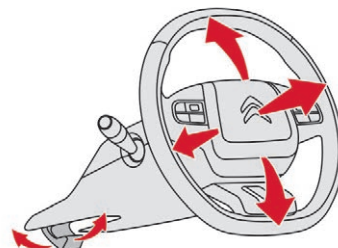
! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically alongside the backrest latching rings.



- ☞ Put backrest **3** in the upright position and push firmly to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that release grip **1** has properly returned to its position and that the red indicator is no longer visible (depending on version).
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

! Caution, a backrest that has not latched correctly compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – Risk of serious injury!

Steering wheel adjustment

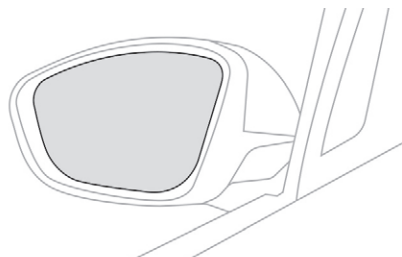


- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors



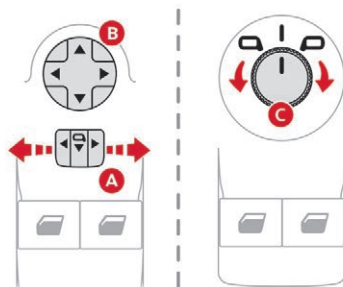
Demisting – Defrosting



Demisting - defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Rear screen demist – defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** or turn control **C** (depending on version) to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** or **C** (depending on version) in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** or **C** (depending on version) to its centre position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. Objects seen in the mirror are in reality closer than they appear. Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Manual folding

You can manually fold the mirrors (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.)

- ☞ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

If your vehicle is fitted with this function, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:



- ☞ Place control **A** at the central position.
- ☞ Pull control **A** backwards.

From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Electric unfolding

Door mirrors are unfolded electrically with the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system when the vehicle is unlocked. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control backwards again to the central position.

i Folding/unfolding during locking/unlocking can be disabled. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Rear view mirror

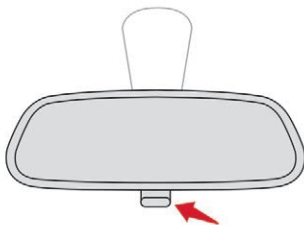
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the mirror is directed correctly in the "day" position.

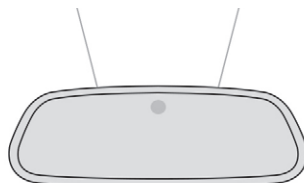
Day/night position



☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Ventilation

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

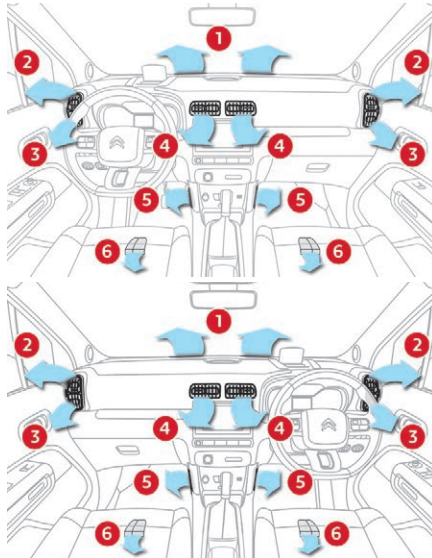
Control panel



Depending on equipment, the controls for this system will be accessible via the **Air conditioning** menu on the touch screen, or via the centre console panel located below the audio system.

The demisting/defrosting controls for the windscreen and the rear screen are located below the touch screen, or on the centre console panel located below the audio system.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Adjustable and closable side air vent.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Rear air outlets.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

- i** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
 - ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
 - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
 - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
 - ☞ Replace the filter elements regularly. We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
 - ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

To avoid the windows misting up and deterioration in the quality of the air:

- do not drive for too long with the ventilation switched off.
- do not keep air recirculation set for an extended period.



If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

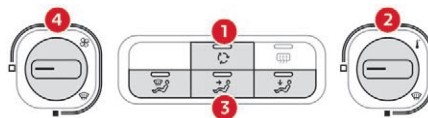
i The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

i Stop & Start

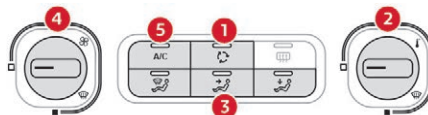
The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating/Manual air conditioning



The heating only operates when the engine is running.



The manual air conditioning operates with the engine running.

1. Recirculation of interior air.
2. Adjusting the temperature.
3. Adjusting the air distribution.
4. Adjusting the air flow.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

Adjusting the temperature

☞ Turn the control from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

Adjusting the air flow

☞ Turn the thumbwheel to obtain a comfortable air flow.

i Avoid driving for too long without ventilation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Adjusting the air distribution



Central and side air vents.



Footwells.



Windscreen and side windows.

i The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding buttons.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed. It enables you to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

A/C

Press this button to switch the air conditioning on/off.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

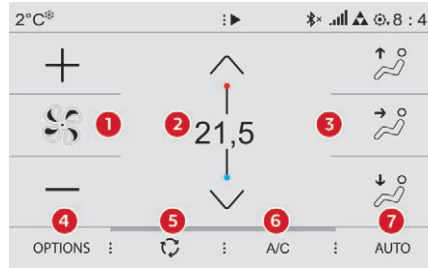
Automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on.

Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.



Select the **Air conditioning** menu in the touch screen to display the controls page for the system.



1. Adjusting the air flow.
2. Adjusting the temperature.
3. Adjusting the air distribution.
4. Access to the secondary page.
5. Recirculation of interior air.
6. Air conditioning on/off.
7. Automatic mode.

Temperature adjustment



Press one of these buttons to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.



For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, press the temperature setting button down or up until **LO** or **HI** is displayed.

Automatic comfort programme

AUTO Press the **AUTO** button to activate or deactivate automatic air conditioning mode.

The air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

OPTIONS Go to the secondary page by pressing this button to adjust the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of the available settings.



To change the current setting, press the button several times in succession to access the desired mode:

"Soft": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

"Normal": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).


"Fast": provides strong and effective air flow.

This setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, on deactivation of AUTO mode, the last selected setting remains. Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.


You can manually adjust the air flow and distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the automatic comfort programme is deactivated.

AUTO  Press the **AUTO** button to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

Air flow adjustment



 Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the air flow.

The symbol for air flow (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow setting made. By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation. "OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the distribution of air in the passenger compartment using these three buttons.



Windscreen.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function.


i The three buttons can be activated simultaneously. In this case, the flows of air from the central and side vents and the footwell vents are favoured.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed. It enables you to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.


Switching on

A/C  Press the button to activate the air conditioning.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning function is activated.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is deactivated.

Switching off

- A/C  Press the button again to deactivate the air conditioning.

When the indicator lamp is off, the air conditioning function is deactivated.

Ventilation function with the ignition on


When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the **air flow** settings and the **air distribution** in the passenger compartment depending on the battery charge.

This function does not operate the air conditioning.



Recirculation of interior air


The intake of exterior air prevents and eliminates misting of the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air prevents exterior odours and smoke from entering the passenger compartment.

-  This function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.



-  Press this button to recirculate the interior air.
-  Press this button again to allow the intake of exterior air.

 Avoid the prolonged use of interior air recirculation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).


Front demist – defrost






These markings on the control panels indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows. During the winter period, direct the side air vents towards the side windows to optimise their demisting and defrosting.

With control panel on the centre console

On/Off

-  Set the temperature and air flow controls to the appropriately marked positions.




-  Press this button to distribute the air to the "Windscreen" position; its indicator lamp comes on.
-  Check that recirculation of interior air is deactivated: its indicator lamp must be off.
-  To switch it off, put the air flow control to the 0 position.


With touch screen


On/Off



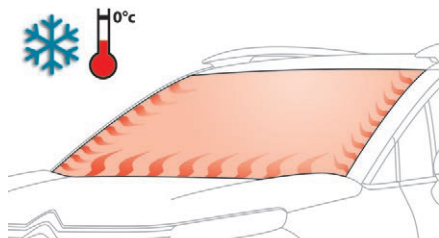
-  Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

-  To switch it off, press this button again; its indicator lamp goes off.

-  With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

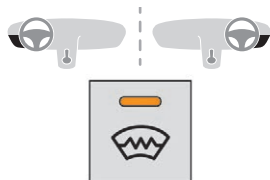
Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the whole of the windscreen, as well as the areas alongside the windscreen pillars.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

Switching on/off

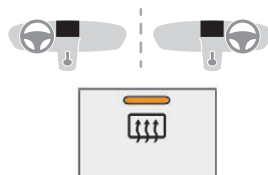


☞ With the engine running, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The system is activated if the exterior temperature falls below 0°C.

☞ Pressing the button again switches off the system; its indicator lamp goes off.
The system is automatically deactivated every time the engine is switched off.

Rear screen demist – defrost



On/Off

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The button indicator lamp comes on.

Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again. The button indicator lamp goes off.

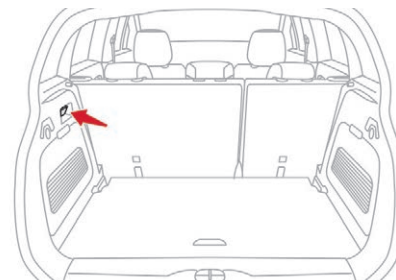


Switch off the heating of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as you judge it necessary, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.



Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Boot lighting

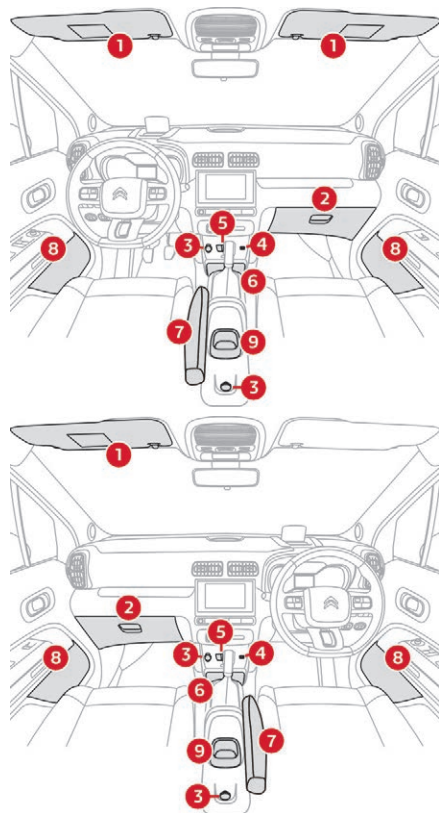


This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

There are different lighting times:

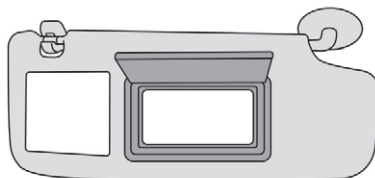
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy saving mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Front fittings



1. Sun visor.
2. Glove box.
3. 12 V accessory socket (max 120 W).
4. USB port.
5. Open storage compartment.
6. Open storage with double cup holder.
7. Front armrest.
(depending on version)
8. Storage wells.
9. Open storage with cup holder.

Sun visor

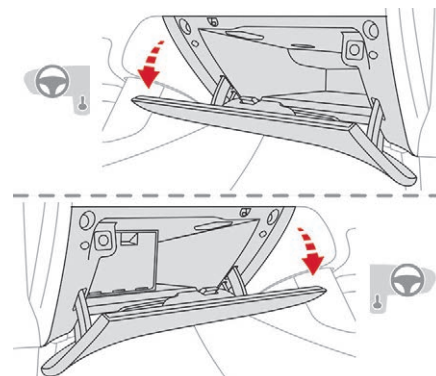


The sun visors are fitted with a vanity mirror with concealing flap and a card holder (or ticket holder).

! Do not attach or hang anything from the sun visor on the passenger side as this could cause injuries if the front airbag is deployed (fitted in the roof).

Glove box

It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch and can hold a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc.

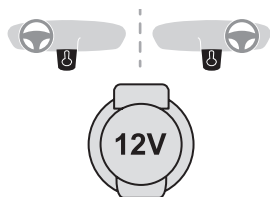


To open the glove box, pull the handle towards you.

If so equipped, it is lit when the lid is opened and is cooled by the same air conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

3

12 V socket

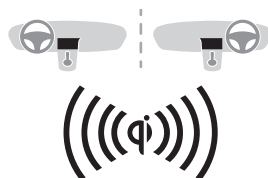


- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 watts), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

! Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (you may otherwise damage your portable device).

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Wireless charger



This system allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.

Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start. Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Charging

- ☞ First ensure that the charging zone is clear of other articles.

- ☞ Place a portable device in the middle of the charging zone.
- ☞ Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green.



- ☞ Charging of the portable device's battery then starts.
- ☞ Once the portable device's battery is fully charged, the charge indicator lamp goes off.

! The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.

! Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged – risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process!



Checking operation

The state of the charge indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Charge indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
Fixed, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging...
Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed, orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.

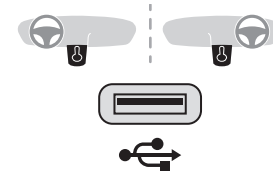
If the indicator lamp is lit orange:



- remove the portable device, then replace it in the middle of the charging zone.
- or
- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

USB port



A USB port is located on the central console. It allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick.

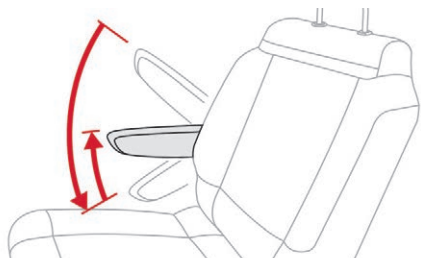
It reads the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or those on the touch screen.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically. A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.

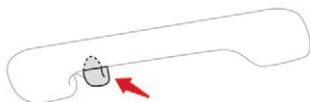
Front armrest

Height adjustment



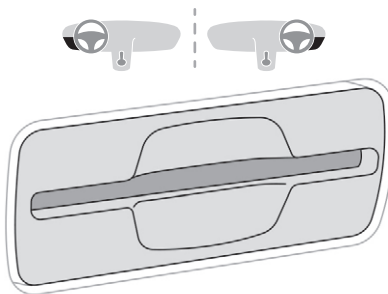
- ☞ Lower the armrest as far as it will go.
- ☞ Lift it and bring it to the desired position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ When in the high position, lift it to release it and return it to the low position.

Clothes hooks



They are located above each rear door.

Card holder



This allows the storage of a toll ticket or a parking card for example.

Mats

Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

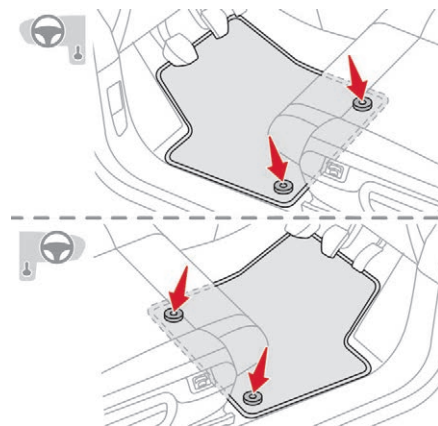
Removing

- To remove the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
 - ☞ unclip the fixings,
 - ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,



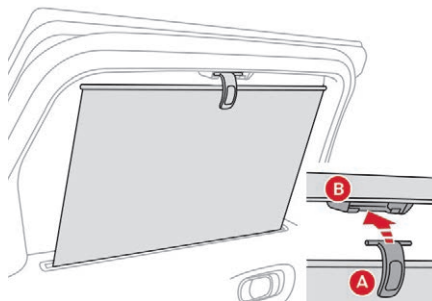
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.



☞ Pull the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

i Always guide the blind slowly using the tab, both up and down.

Rear fittings

Pockets, seat backrest

They are on the back of the front seats.

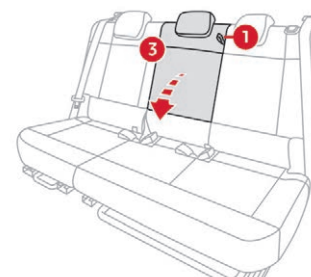
Side blinds

Fitted to the side windows, they protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.

Rear armrest and ski flap

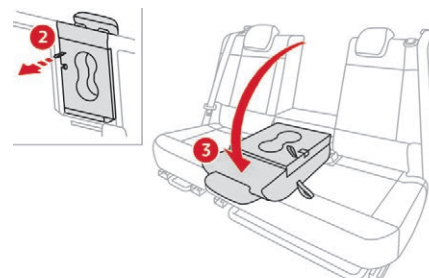
The armrest incorporates two cup holders. It has direct access to the boot for transporting long objects.

Folding from the passenger compartment



- ☞ Pull strap **1** towards you to unlock the armrest.
- ☞ Guide armrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

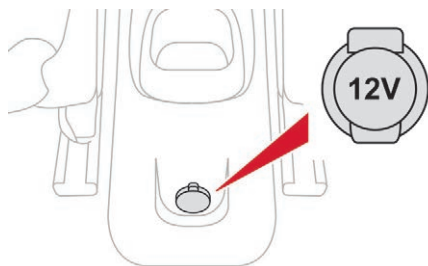
Folding from the boot



- ☞ Pull strap **2** towards you to unlock the armrest.
- ☞ Push armrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

! Caution, when putting the armrest back in place, ensure that it is properly locked and that the red indicator for each strap is no longer visible. Otherwise, passenger safety could be compromised if sharp braking occurs or if there is a collision. The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – Risk of serious injury!

12 V accessory socket

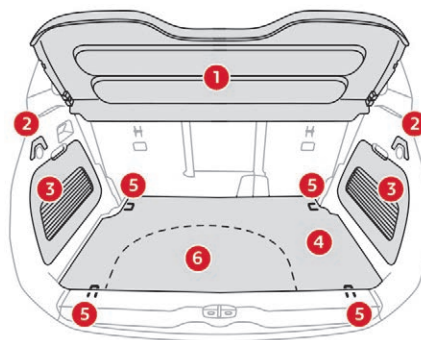


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 watts), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

! Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (risk of damage to your device).

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Boot fittings



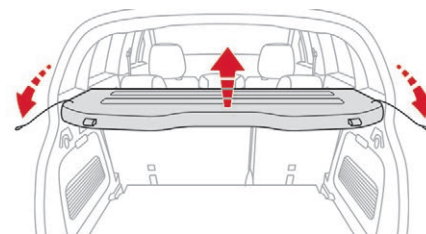
1. **Rear shelf.**
(see details below)
2. **Hooks.**
(see details on following page)
3. **Closed side storage compartments.**
(see details on following page)
4. **Boot floor (2 positions).**

5. **Stowing rings.**

6. **Storage compartment beneath the boot carpet.**

(see details on following page)

Rear shelf

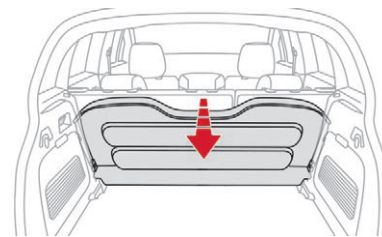


To remove the shelf:

- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ raise the shelf slightly to unclip it, then remove it.

There are several options for storing the shelf:

- either upright behind the front seats,

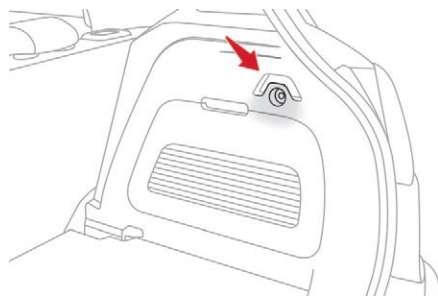


- or upright against the rear seats in the boot.

To refit the shelf:

- ☞ position the shelf so that the notches are exactly on the fixing pins,
- ☞ push the shelf down on the pins to clip it,
- ☞ hook the two cords.

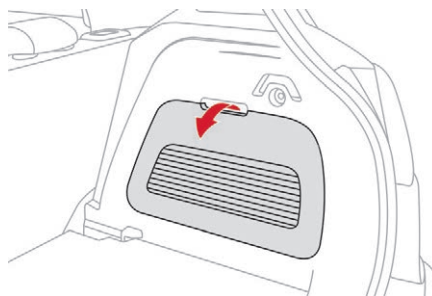
Hooks



These can be used to secure shopping bags.

! Take care to only hang up lightweight bags.

Closed side storage compartments



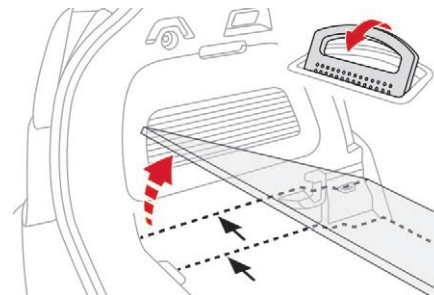
- ☞ Pull upwards to unclip and open the removable grill.

Depending on version, the storage compartment on the right may contain the vehicle tools.

Boot floor (2 positions)

This two-position floor allows the boot space to be optimised using the lateral stops at the edges:

- High position (**100 kg max**): to get a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down and pulled back as far as possible (depending on version).
- Low position: maximum boot volume.

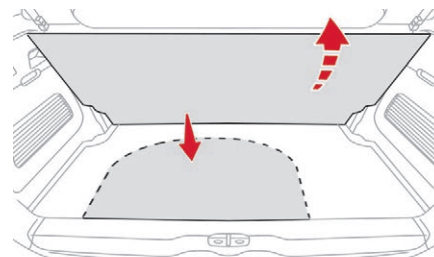


To change the height:

- ☞ Lift and pull the floor towards you using the central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
- ☞ Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.

i Ensure that the boot is empty before moving the boot floor.

Storage compartment



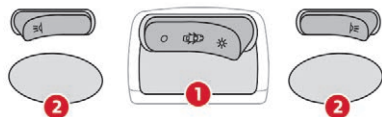
3

- ☞ Raise the boot floor as far as possible to access the storage compartment.

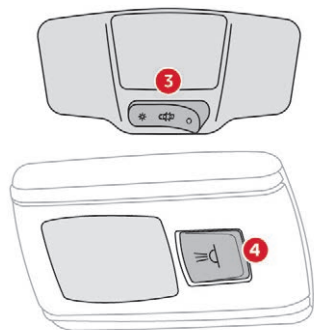
Depending on version, it includes:

- a temporary puncture repair kit with the vehicle tools,
- a spare wheel with or without the vehicle tools.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps



3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps

Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy saving mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

i When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position. To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps



☞ With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

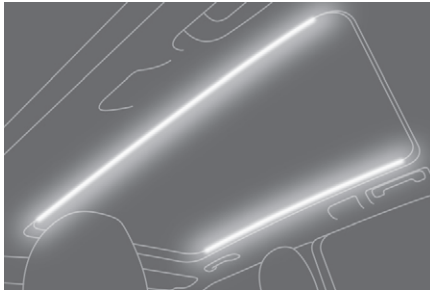
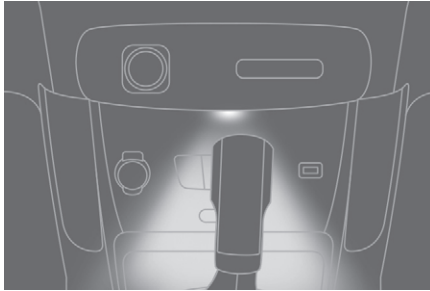
! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

Switching on



At night, the central console lighting and panoramic roof lighting (if fitted to your vehicle) come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Lighting control

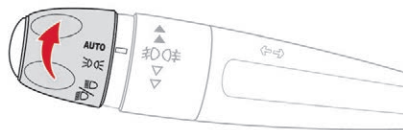
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

If one or more lamps fails, a message asks you to check the lamp or lamps concerned.

Travelling abroad
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Main lighting

Selection of main lighting mode



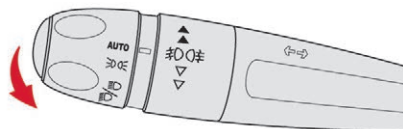
Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps/daytime running lamps.

 Sidelamps only.

 Dipped or main beam headlamps.

Headlamp dipping



Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

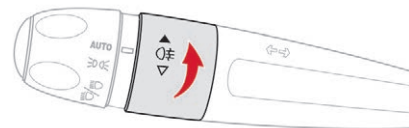
In "AUTO" and sidelamps modes, the driver can flash the main beam headlamps by pulling the lever.


Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Foglamps

Rear foglamp

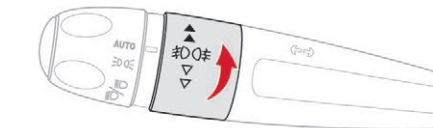


 It operates with the sidelamps or dipped beam headlamps on.

To switch it on, turn the ring forwards.
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

To switch it off, turn the ring backwards.

Front and rear foglamps



They operate with the sidelamps or dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.

Turn the ring:

- ☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ backwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring backwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, by day and night, using the front foglamps and the rear foglamp is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to turn off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp as soon as they are no longer necessary.

i Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

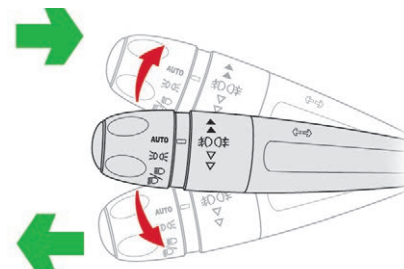
i Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off

To reactivate the lighting control, set the ring to "AUTO", then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

It will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge in battery (entering energy-saving mode).

Direction indicators (flashing)



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the "AUTO" position and a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction

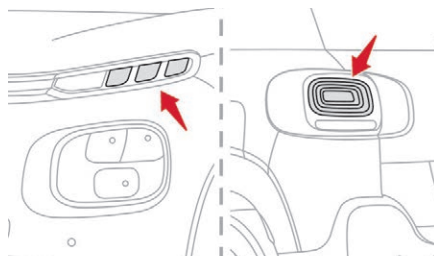


In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the sunshine sensor, integrated with the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps



The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

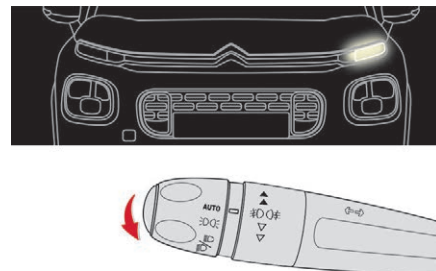
- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk in "AUTO" position with adequate light level).

- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk in "AUTO" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

i In daytime running lamps mode, the diodes are brighter.

Parking lamps

Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example, when parking on the left: lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

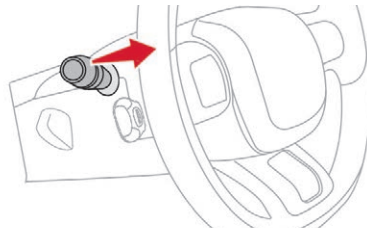
Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated (lighting control stalk at the AUTO position), under low ambient light, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Manual



The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk.
- ☞ Another "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

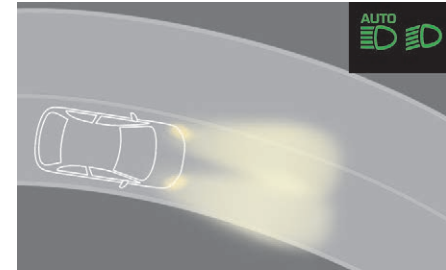
Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

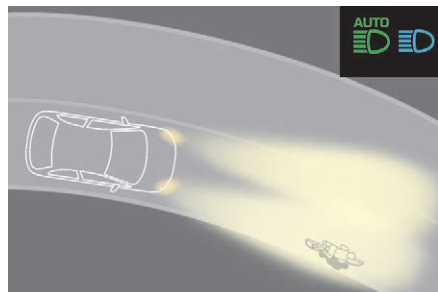
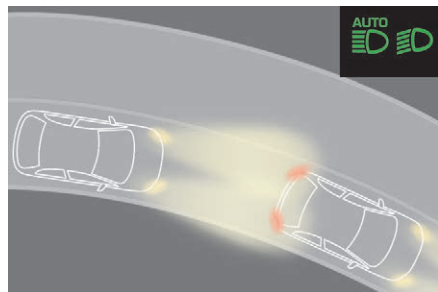
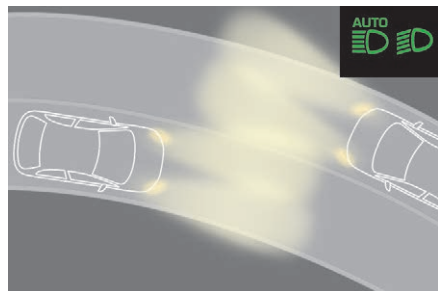
Automatic headlamp dipping

System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the ambient light level and the driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 16 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.





Activation/Deactivation

☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.



☞ In the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dip**".

When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode. The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is maintained, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function. As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:

- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

i The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or covered (by a sticker, etc.),
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

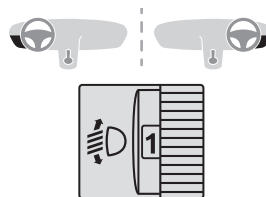
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example, vehicles driving behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could mask the camera's view.

Headlamp adjustment



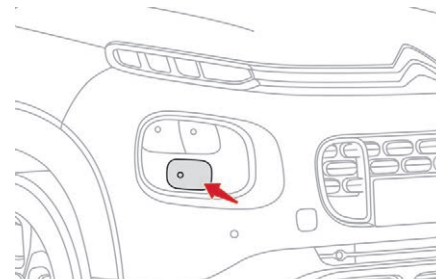
To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0.** Driver only or driver + front passenger.
- 1.** Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + maximum authorised load.

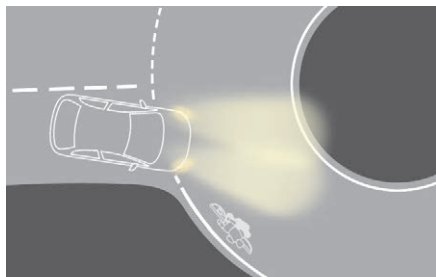
- 2.** Driver only + maximum authorised load.

i The initial setting is position 0.

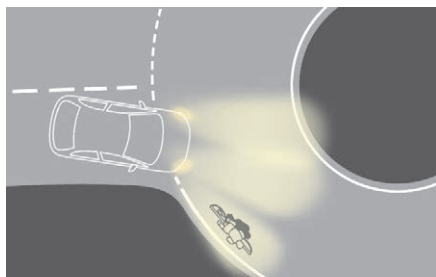
Cornering lighting



If your vehicle is equipped with it, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering lighting



With cornering lighting

Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,
- or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

Without audio system

- ☞ In the "**LIGHTING**" menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate "**DIR HEADLAMPS**" (directional headlamps).

With audio system



- ☞ In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Directional headlamps**".

With touch screen



- ☞ In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Lighting**" and activate/deactivate "**Directional headlamps**".

Wiper control stalk

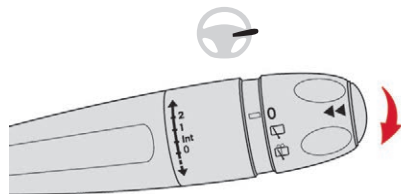
- i** In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

- !** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

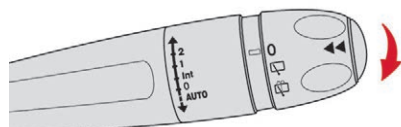
Manual controls

The windscreen wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

With manual wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2

Fast wiping (heavy rain).

1

Normal wiping (moderate rain).

Int

Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0

Off.



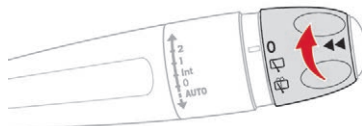
Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

AUTO ↓

Automatic wiping (press down, then release) or single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Rear wiper



Rear wiper selection ring:

0

Off.



Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).



Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation/Deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.



This function is activated by default.



If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Without audio system

In the "COMFORT" menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate "REAR WIPE REV" (automatic wiping in reverse).

4

With audio system



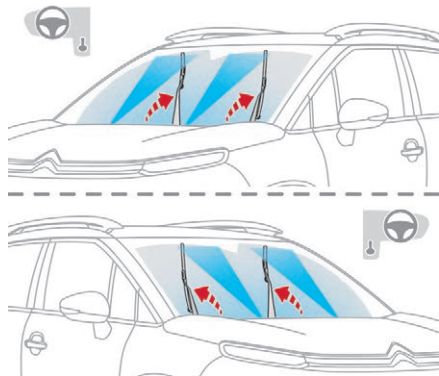
In the **"Personalisation-configuration"** menu, activate/deactivate **"Rear wipe in reverse gear"**.

With touch screen



In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the **"Vehicle settings"** tab, then **"Comfort"** and activate/deactivate **"Rear wiper in reverse"**.

Front windscreen wash



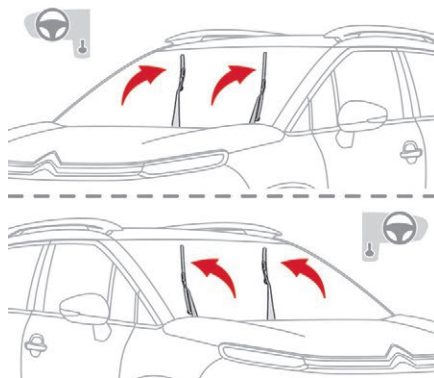
Pull the windscreen wash control towards you. The windscreen wash and then the wipers come on for a preset time.

The height of the screen wash jets can be adjusted. If you want to change them from the factory setting, insert a needle into each of the jets and position them.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

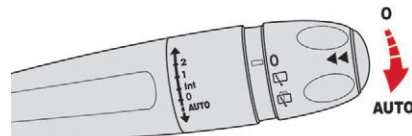


- In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Automatic windscreen wipers



The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rain without any action on the part of the driver.

Switching on

Briefly push the control stalk downwards.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.



Depending on version, this symbol appears on the display screen or this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off

Briefly push the control stalk downwards again or shift the control stalk to a different position (Int, 1 or 2).



Depending on version, this symbol disappears from the display screen or this indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, integrated with the sunshine sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for your vehicle. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

! We draw your attention to the following points:

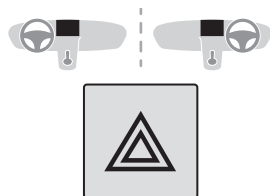
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

Hazard warning lamps



- When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically the next time you accelerate.

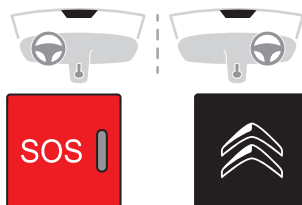
- You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



- Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing green LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" service*.

Pressing this button again cancels the command and the green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, contacts you in your own language**, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.


- * In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
- ** As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and of Telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system (type 1)



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly. If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: replace the back-up battery. In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work. Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

 The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Operation of the system (type 2)



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.


For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.

If the red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.
If the red indicator lamp is on fixed: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.

If the red indicator lamp is on fixed: there is a system fault.
If the red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work. Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

 The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and of Telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by pressing "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the brand's dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) comprising the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces. The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.



If these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system.



STOP

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. In both cases, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

- When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.
- Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

! In emergency braking, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

! After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started. They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

Deactivating the ASR (depending on version)

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

It is however recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.



In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, select the **"Driving functions"** tab, then **"Traction control"**.

Or, depending on version:



Turn the **"Grip control"** knob to this position.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by a message as well as illumination of the knob (depending on version).

The ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivating the ASR (depending on version)

The system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h). Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:



In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, select the **"Driving functions"** tab, then **"Traction control"**.

Or, depending on version:



Turn the **"Grip control"** knob to this position.

Malfunction



The illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that there is a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! After an impact, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

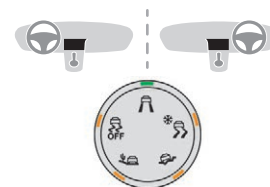
To benefit in full from the effectiveness of these systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

Grip control

Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand. This system, whose operation has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during use of a passenger car).

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered. An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on to confirm your choice.



! Associated with all-seasons Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and traction. They are efficient in winter and summer conditions.

Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.



☞ Place the knob in this position.

i Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

All road (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible. When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 30 mph (50 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

i Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.



You can deactivate the ASR system by turning the knob to the "OFF" position.

The ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory. This system is reactivated automatically from 30 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

Driving recommendations

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

Hill Assist Descent

System that provides assistance when descending on loose or soft surfaces (gravel, mud, etc.) or a steep gradient.

This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.

During a descent, it assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

i For the system to activate, the slope must be greater than 5%.
The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.

Otherwise, engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling. With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

! When the system enters regulating mode, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

i The system is no longer available if the speed of the vehicle is above 30 mph (50 km/h).

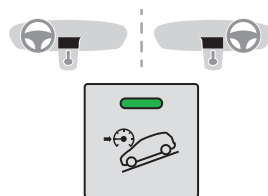
Operation

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.

The system's status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

The driver can select the system when the engine is running, when the vehicle is stationary or moving at speeds up to 30 mph (50 km/h).



With the speed below 30 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its indicator lights up to select the system; this indicator lamp appears in green in the instrument panel.

The system becomes active at a speed below 20 mph (30 km/h).

When the vehicle begins its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system regulates the speed:



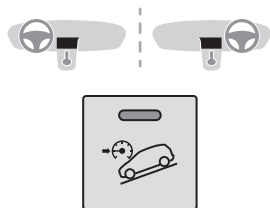
- if the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes rapidly,
- if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.

During a descent, with the vehicle stationary, if you release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.

The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.

If the speed exceeds 20 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the indicator lamp in the button remains lit. Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 20 mph (30 km/h) again, and the slope and pedal release conditions are met. You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Switching off



- Press this button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel.

Above 45 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Malfunction

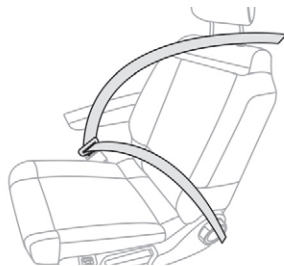


If a fault occurs with the system, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

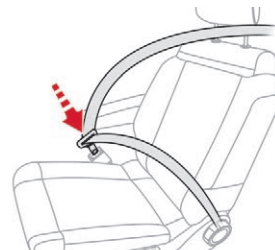
Seat belts

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the passengers. The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on. The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the passenger's chest, thus improving their protection.

Fastening



- Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

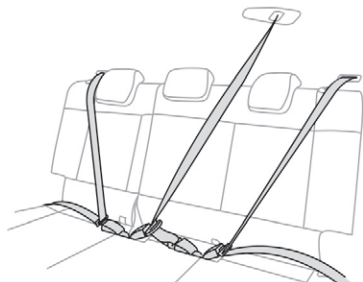
- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Height adjustment



- To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it to the notch desired.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a belt, with three fixing points and an inertia reel. The outer seats are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

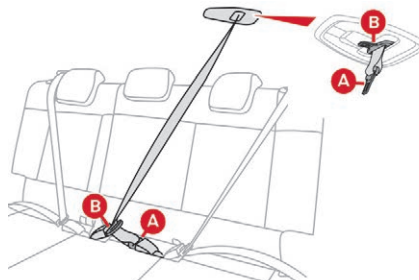
Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Seat belts, centre rear

The seat belt for the rear central position is integrated into the rear of the roof.

Installation



- ☞ Pull the strap and insert tongue **A** into the left buckle.
- ☞ Insert tongue **B** into the right buckle.
- ☞ Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Removal and storage

- ☞ Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the button on buckle **A**.
- ☞ Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened alerts



A. Front and rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.



1. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
3. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this or these warning lamp(s) flash for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this or these warning lamp(s) remain on until the driver or the front passenger and/or the rear passenger(s) fasten their seat belt.

Front seat belt warning lamp(s)

On switching on the ignition, warning lamp **A** comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (**1** or **2**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display if the driver's seat belt and/or the passenger(s) seat belt is/are not fastened or is/are unfastened.

Rear seat belt warning lamp(s)

The corresponding warning lamp (**3** to **5**) warning lamp comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display when one or more rear passengers unfastens their seat belts.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over.

You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact,

the pyrotechnic pretensioner device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked and, if necessary, replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

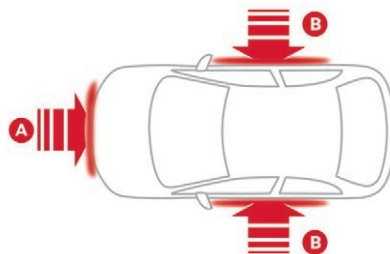
System designed to contribute towards improving passenger safety (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger). If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

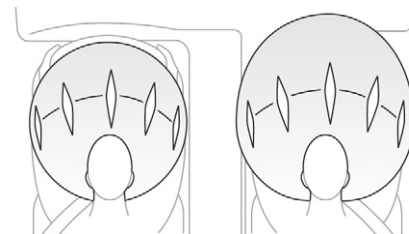


- A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i The deployment of an airbag is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.

This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of an airbag may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe frontal impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

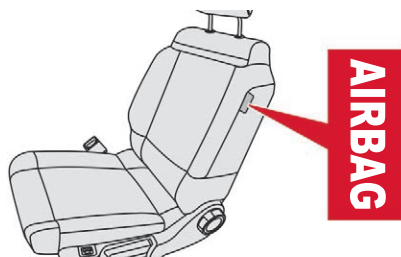
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe side impact to minimise the risk of injury to the chest, between hip and shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a severe side impact covering all or part of side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front passenger and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

This system contributes towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries in case of airbag deployment.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not attach anything to or hang anything from the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags

Do not attach anything or hang anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

General points relating to child seats

- i** The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

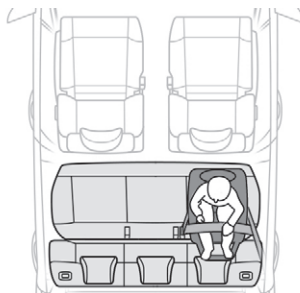
- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

- i** It is **recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
 - **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
 - **forward facing** over the age of 3.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

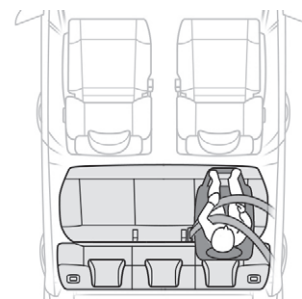
Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Child seat in the front

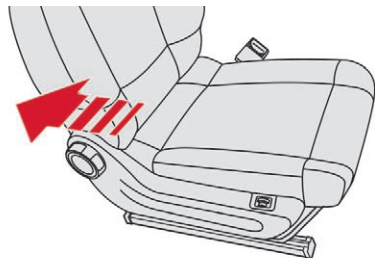
"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the rearmost longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.

! It is critical to deactivate the front passenger airbag. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.**

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.



Passenger seat adjusted to the rearmost longitudinal position.

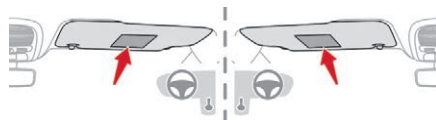
"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the rearmost longitudinal position with the seat backrest straightened and leave the front passenger airbag activated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag.
This could cause the death or serious injury of the child.



The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, this warning is available in all of the languages required.

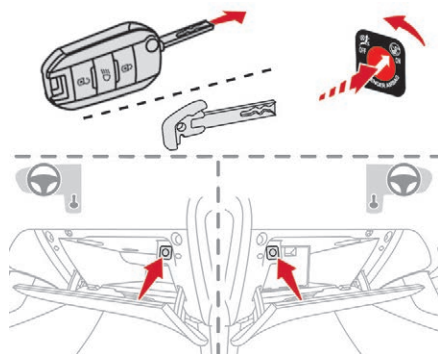
Passenger airbag OFF



i For more information on the **Airbags**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Only the front passenger airbag can be deactivated.



- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the OFF position.
- ☞ Remove the key, keeping the switch in this position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen or on the instrument panel. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivating the front passenger airbag

Once you have removed a "**rearward facing**" child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the ON position to reactivate the airbag and so ensure the safety of a front passenger in the event of an accident.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen or on the instrument panel for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

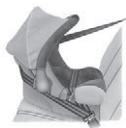
AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مقلعة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumistujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNĚHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkää ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalixx tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitve lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg







L6

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using a seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat			Front passenger airbag	Weight of the child/indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat		Deactivated "OFF"	U	U	X	X
			Activated "ON"	X	X	U	U
Row 2 (d) (e)	Side rear seats			U	U	U	U
	Centre rear seat			X	X	X	X

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.

X: seat not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and car beds cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

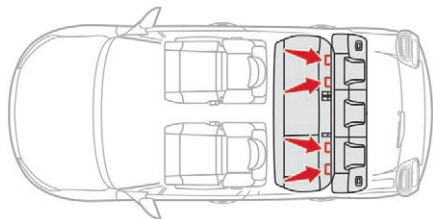
(c) Refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying your child in this seating position.

(d) To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then adjust the backrest to an upright position to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

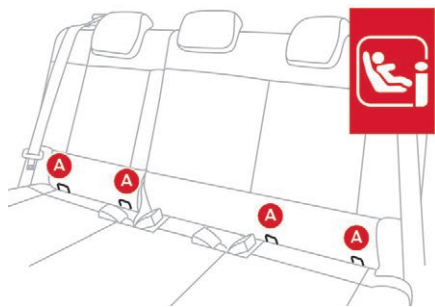
(e) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward or forward facing, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.

"ISOFIX" mountings

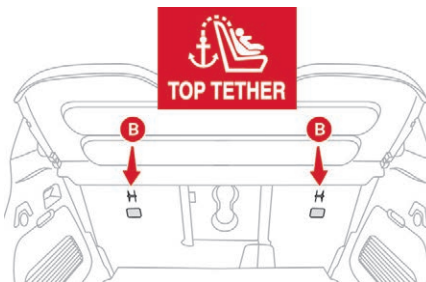
The seats, illustrated below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking.



- a ring **B**, located behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.

This arrangement reduces forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact. This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap**, which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ☞ remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- ☞ pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,

- ☞ fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- ☞ tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

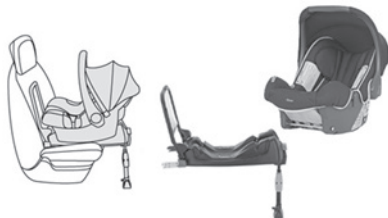
Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"

(size category: E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base attached to rings **A**.

The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"

(size category: B1)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed only in the forward facing position.





Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

Summary table of locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

				Weight of the child/indicative age									
				Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year old			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat				Carrycot		Rearward facing			Rearward facing		Forward facing		
ISOFIX size category				F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat			Front passenger airbag										
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat		Deactivated "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
			Activated "ON"	Not ISOFIX									
Row 2 (b)	Side rear seats			X	IL			IL		IUF/IL			
	Centre rear seat			Not ISOFIX									

- (a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child on this seat.
- (b) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward or forward facing, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **Universal** seat, "Forward facing", secured using an upper strap.

- IL:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **Semi-Universal** seat which is either:
- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
 - "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
 - a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

- X:** seat not suitable for installing an ISOFIX seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.

Summary table for i-Size child seat locations





The i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat, which prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat		Deactivated "OFF"	Not i-Size
			Activated "ON"	Not i-Size
Row 2 (b)	Side rear seats			i-U
	Centre rear seat			Not i-Size

i-U: suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing and rearward facing.

- (a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before placing a child in this seating position.

- (b) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward or forward facing, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.

Advice

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children in the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. We recommend using a booster seat with a backrest equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle under the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within the reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock

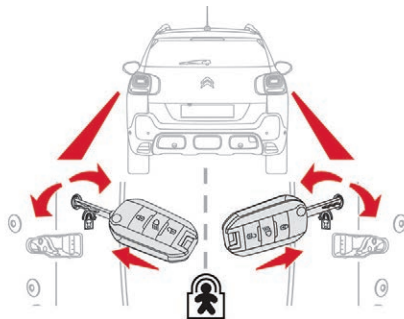


Manual system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.

It is identified by a mark on the bodywork.

Locking



- ☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
 - to the right on the left-hand rear door,
 - to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

- ☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
 - to the left on the left-hand rear door,
 - to the right on the right-hand rear door.

! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock



Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.

Activation/Deactivation



With the ignition on:

- ☞ press this button; its indicator lamp comes on, accompanied by a message to confirm the activation.
- ☞ press this button again; its indicator lamp goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm the deactivation.

The indicator lamp remains on as long as the child lock is activated. Opening the doors from the outside remains possible.

The indicator lamp remains off as long as the child lock is deactivated.

! Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions. Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality. As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary. On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended. In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

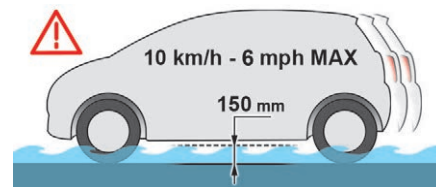
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) - Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.



If you must drive through water:

- check that the depth of the water is not more than 6 inches (15 cm), allowing for any waves that might be made by other road users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road and as soon as it is safe to do so, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine and gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

In case of towing

- ! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

! New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 600 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

- i For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

- i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

- i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

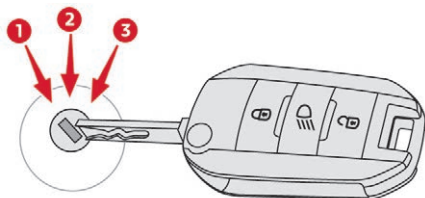
If the system fails, as reported by a message, the engine will not start.

Contact a CITROËN dealer.

- ! For safety and theft protection reasons, never leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it with you.

Starting/Switching off the engine with the key

Key ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and remove the key, steering column locked,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel pre-heating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Starting the engine

Parking brake applied:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox** in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, in mode **N** or **P**, fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- ☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

i In certain cases, you may have to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ☞ With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

i In wintry conditions, the warning lamp may stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

! If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of intoxication and death!

In very extreme wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before starting the vehicle.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running in idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1 – Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc.

i For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Key left in

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

Starting the engine



- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the clutch pedal.

or

- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the brake pedal.



- ☞ Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

For **Diesel engines**, when the temperature is below zero and/or the engine is cold, starting will only take place once the pre-heater warning lamp is off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, you should keep the clutch pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

or

- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, you should keep the brake pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

i The presence of the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone is essential. If the electronic key is not detected in this zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into this zone so that the engine can be started. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected – Back-up starting" section.

! If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed on the instrument panel. In some circumstances, you will need to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column. A message will notify you if this is necessary.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Park the vehicle, engine at idle.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.

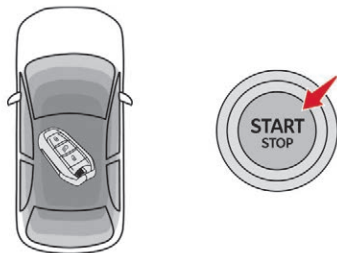
In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly to lock the steering column.

i If the vehicle is not stationary, the engine will not stop.

! Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Switching the ignition on (without starting)



With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on. This also allows the accessories to be used (e.g. car radio, lighting, etc.).

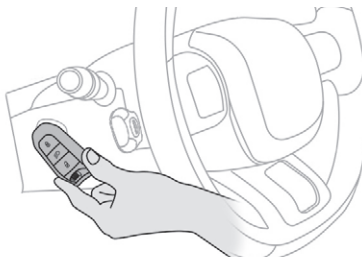
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- ☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column to allow the engine to be started if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or when the battery in the electronic key is discharged.



- ☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Back-up switching off



When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- ☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about three seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

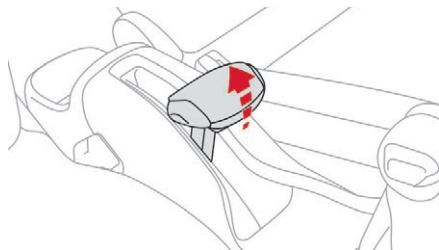
Emergency switching off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving). Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about three seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Parking brake

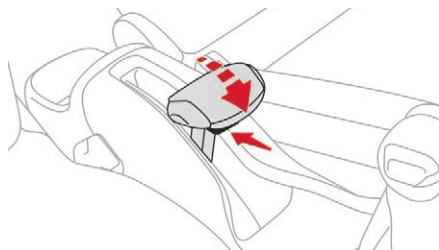
Application



- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

! When parking on a slope, turn the wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

Release



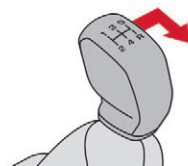
- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Press the clutch pedal fully down.
- ☞ Move the gear lever fully to the right then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

- i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
 - always select neutral,
 - press the clutch pedal.

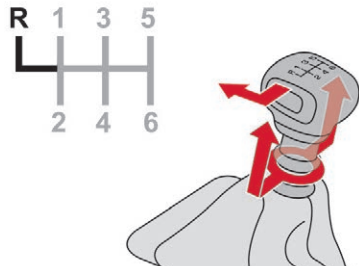
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

- ☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

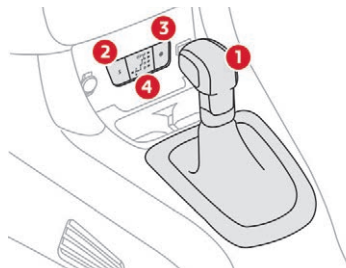
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

Six-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

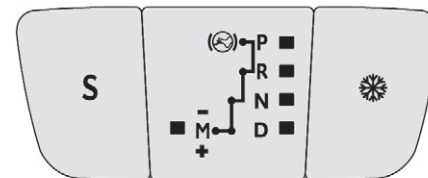
Two driving modes are available:

- **automatic** operation with electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving and a **snow** programme to make driving easier when grip is poor.
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.



1. Gear selector.
2. "S" (**sport**) button.
3. "❄" (**snow**) button.
4. Gear selector positions graphic.

Gear selector positions



P. Park.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.

- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M +/-. Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

- ☞ Push backwards to change up a gear.
- or

- ☞ Push forwards to change down a gear.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the selector to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

- P.** Parking.
- R.** Reverse.
- N.** Neutral.
- D.** Drive (automatic driving).
- S.** **Sport** programme.
- *** **Snow** programme.
- 1 2 3 4 5 6.** Gears engaged during manual operation.
- .** Invalid value during manual operation

Foot on the brake pedal



- ☞ Press the brake pedal when this indicator lamp is displayed or a message tells you to do so on the instrument panel (e.g. starting the engine).

Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Apply the parking brake.
 - ☞ Select position **P** or **N**.
 - ☞ Start the engine.
- If these conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a warning message.
- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
 - ☞ Release the parking brake.
 - ☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
 - ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.
- The vehicle moves off immediately.

i If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate. If the temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left at idle for four minutes, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed. Do not leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

- ☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any action needed from the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle. For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ With the engine running, press button **S**. The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.
S appears on the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ With the engine running, press the "❄" button.
The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and handling when traction is poor.
❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to standard automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the selected button again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select the **M** position for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the **–** sign to change down a gear.

Gears are changed only if the vehicle's speed and engine speed allow; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.

D disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.
If the engine is under-revving or over-revving, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time. When the vehicle is stationary or crawling, the gearbox engages first gear automatically. The sport and snow programmes are inactive in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral. In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

i If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, a warning message appears in the screen.

☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

Malfunction



When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox. Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



- There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
 - if you force the movement of the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.



To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), put the selector in position **N** and apply the parking brake.



If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Gear efficiency indicator

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

Gear shift recommendations should not be considered obligatory. The configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. The driver thus remains responsible for deciding whether to follow or ignore the system's instructions.

This function cannot be deactivated.



With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

On BlueHDi Diesel versions with manual gearbox, in certain driving conditions the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode of Stop & Start). In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

Example:

- You are in 3rd gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.



The system adapts its gear change recommendations according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, etc.). The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

i On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

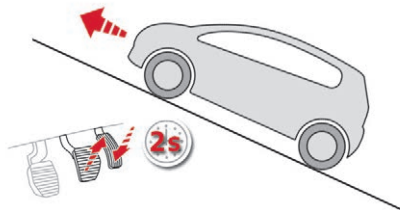
It is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp lights up fixed on the instrument panel.

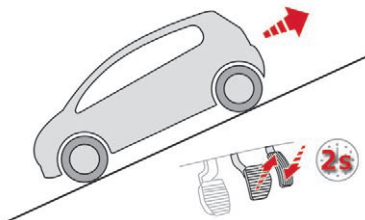
! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:

With a manual gearbox, if you are in first gear or in neutral.

With an automatic gearbox, if you are in position **D** or **M**.



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off.

The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Going into engine STOP mode



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically.

- **With a manual gearbox**, with the vehicle stationary, when you put the gearbox into neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **With an automatic gearbox**, with the vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or put the gear selector in position **N**.



Stop & Start time counter
(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with this system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

i For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear. The Stop & Start system does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering, etc.



Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the "START/STOP" button.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not activated when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (uphill or downhill),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed to control the system.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode



This indicator lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically:

- **With a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**:
 - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
 - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
 - or when you engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START mode invoked automatically

As a safety measure or to maintain comfort levels in the vehicle, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h),
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, climate control, etc.) where the engine is needed to control the system or the vehicle.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

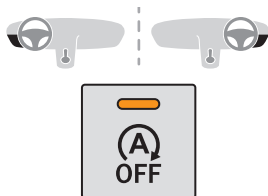
Deactivation/Reactivation

In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain the temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on.

If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts. The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

With/Without audio system



☞ Press this button.

Deactivation is confirmed by illumination of the indicator lamp for the button and the display of a message.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function.

The indicator lamp for the button is turned off and a message is displayed.

With touch screen



☞ In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the **"Driving functions"** tab, then **"Stop & Start"**.

! Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



! Driving on flooded roads

Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

In the event of a fault with the system, the button's indicator lamp flashes for a few moments, then remains on. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the engine may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

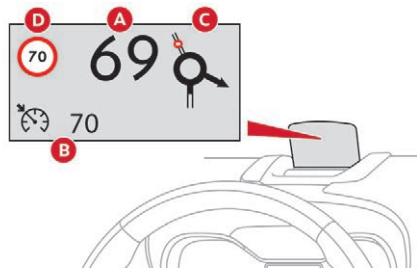
All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a smoked blade in the driver's field of vision so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.

Displays during operation

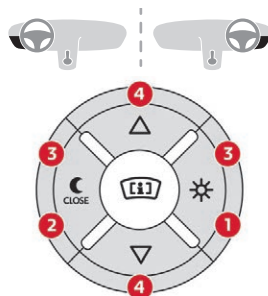


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

- A. The speed of your vehicle.
- B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
- C. If your vehicle is so equipped, automatic emergency braking alerts and navigation instructions.
- D. If your vehicle is so equipped, speed limit information.

i For more information on **Navigation**, refer to the **Audio and telematics** section.

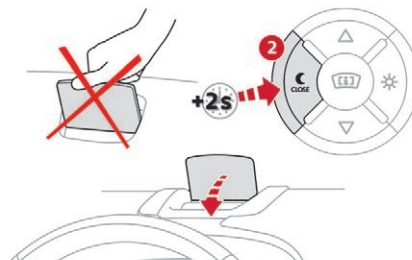
Buttons



1. On.
2. Off (long press).
3. Brightness adjustment.
4. Display height adjustment.

Activation/Deactivation

- i** With the engine running, press button 1 to activate the system and deploy the blade.



- i** Press and hold button 2 to deactivate the system and retract the blade. The activated/deactivated state is saved and restored on restarting the engine.

Height adjustment

- i** With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using buttons 4:
 - up to move the display up,
 - down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

- i** With the engine running, adjust the brightness of information display using buttons 3:
 - the "sun" to increase the brightness,
 - the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

! When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the blade (or in its recess) so as to not impede deployment of the blade and its correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.) the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference. Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information. To clean the blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth or detergent or solvent products as these could scratch the blade or damage the anti-reflection coating.

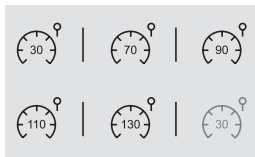
i This system operates when the engine is running, and the settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be stored that will then be offered for configuration of two systems: speed limiter or cruise control. You can store up to six speed settings for each system. Default speed settings have already been stored.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out these operations to change speed settings when the vehicle is stationary.

Changing a speed setting



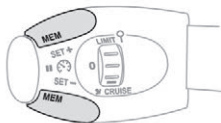
This function can be accessed in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select the **"Driving functions"** tab.
- ☞ Select the **"Adjusting Speeds"** function.



- ☞ Select the **"Speed limiter"** or **"Cruise control"** tab corresponding to the equipment you want to memorise new speed settings for.
- ☞ Select the speed setting you want to change.
- ☞ Enter the new value using the numeric keyboard and confirm.
- ☞ Confirm to store the changes and exit the menu.

"MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Recognition of speed limit signs and recommendation

This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.

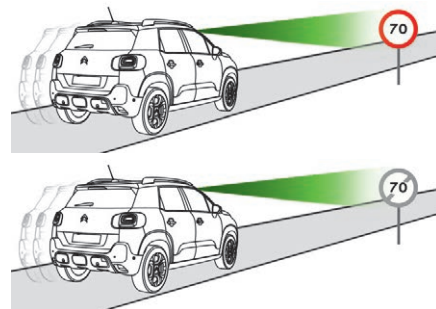
The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account in order to observe the speed limit. For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be set to those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system. The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic. It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Principles

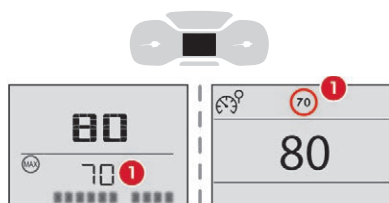


This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

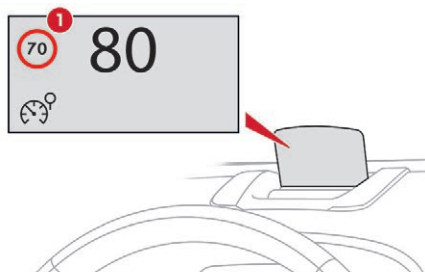
The system also processes speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

Display on the instrument panel



Head-up display



1. Speed limit indication.

Display of the speed



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



The driver can, if desired, adjust the speed of the vehicle according to the information given by the system.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Without audio system

- ☞ In the "DRIVE ASSIST" menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate "ADVISED SPEED" (Speed limit recognition).

With audio system



- ☞ In the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, activate/deactivate "Speed recommendation".

With touch screen

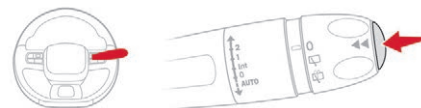


- ☞ In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, select the "Vehicle settings" tab, then "Security" and activate/deactivate "Displaying of the recommended speed".

Information display

Speed limit recognition information is displayed after trip computer data on the LCD text instrument panel.

To display it:



- ☞ Press this button, located on the end of the wiper control stalk.



- Or, depending on equipment, press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel**.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- trailer, caravan,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,

- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

Memorising the speed setting

This memorisation is in addition to the display of **Speed limit recognition**.

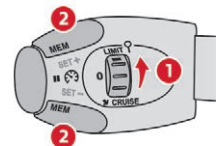


The driver can choose to adapt the speed setting to the speed limit suggested, by pressing the memorisation button for the speed limiter and the cruise control.

This speed setting then replaces the previous speed setting for the speed limiter and/or cruise control.

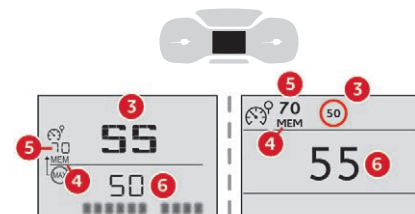
i For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls

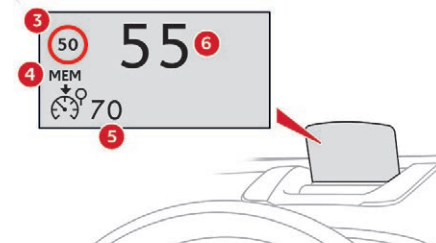


1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display in the instrument panel



Head-up display



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Memorise the speed.
5. Current speed of the vehicle.
6. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.



On detection of a speed limit sign, the system displays the speed limit and a message offering to make it a new speed setting.

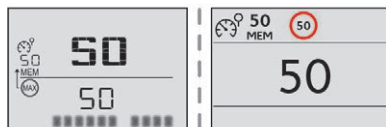
"MEM" flashes in the screen for a few seconds.

i If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the recognition system, the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.



MEM Make an **initial** press on this button to request saving of the speed suggested.

A message asks you to confirm the request with a second press.



MEM Press this button **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Speed limiter



System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

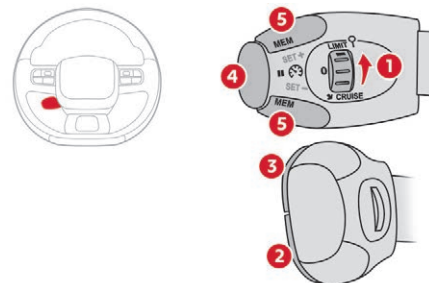
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.

The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h).

The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

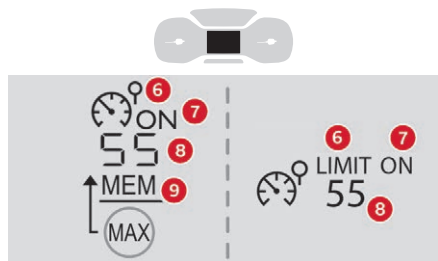
Steering mounted controls



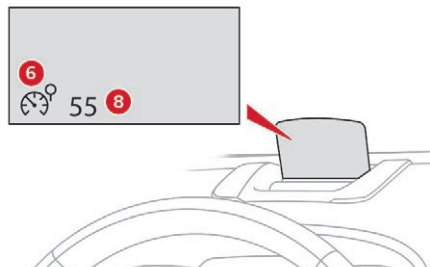
1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On/Pause.
5. Depending on version, Display memorised speed settings or, Use the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



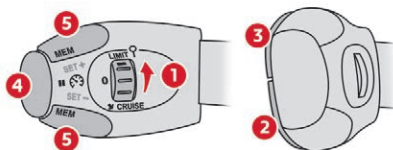
Head-up display



- 6. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
- 7. Speed limiter on/pause indication.
- 8. Programmed speed setting value.

- 9. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

Switching on



- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel 1 to the **LIMIT** position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button 4 to switch the speed limiter on.



- ☞ Pressing button 4 again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

To modify the limit speed setting:

- ☞ in steps of + or -1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button 2 or 3,
- ☞ continuously, in increments of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button 2 or 3.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button 5 to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the speed limiter setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button 5; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button 5 again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

☞ Press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**, to exceed the programmed speed limit. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the 0 position: the display of information about the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control



System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

i The cruise control is **switched on** manually.

It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) as well as:

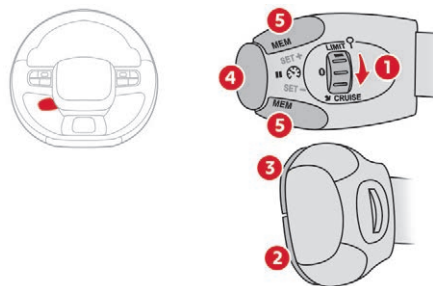
- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of third gear or higher,
- with an automatic gearbox, the engagement of the selector in mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.

The cruise control is **paused** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or if the ESC system is invoked for safety reasons.

Once switched on, you can pause the cruise control at any time by pressing button **4**: the screen confirms the pause.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

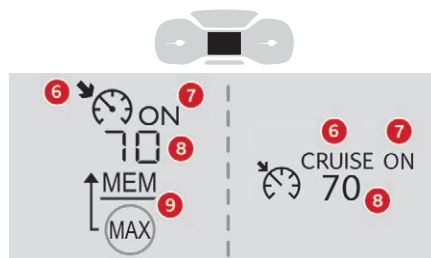
! The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.



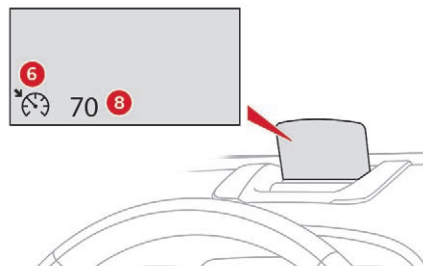
1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lower the cruise setting.
3. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raise the cruise setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Depending on version, Display memorised speed settings or, Use the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Display in the instrument panel

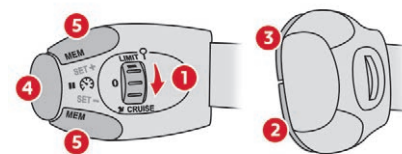


Head-up display



6. Cruise control selection indication.
7. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

Switching on



- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel 1 to the CRUISE position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



- ☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button 2 or 3: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting. You can release the accelerator pedal.



- ☞ Pressing button 4 interrupts operation of the system (pause).



- ☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).



Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

- ! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in increments of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

- ! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

If needed (for overtaking purposes, etc.), the driver can exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the speed setting flashes.

To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal.

Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

- ! On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn thumbwheel 1 to position 0: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow driving at a constant speed for a while and at an adequate safe distance. Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow etc.).

In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Collision Risk Alert and Active Safety Brake



This system is a driving aid that includes three functions.

Collision Risk Alert: it warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance: it supplements the braking action taken by the driver if this is inadequate.

Active Safety Brake: it intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

If the driver fails to act, it contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.

Activation and operating conditions

The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



The system is activated from 3 mph (5 km/h). It takes account of:

- vehicles driving in the same direction or stationary,
- pedestrians in the traffic lane (bicycles, motorcycles, animals and objects on the road are not necessarily detected).

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations. This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a sense of deceleration.

Operating limits

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended:

- when towing a trailer,
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling stand in a workshop,
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version),
- following impact damage to the windscreen close to the detection camera,
- if the brake lamps are not working.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay alert and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Collision Risk Alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel or on the head-up display.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.

The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.

The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operating conditions of the vehicle (on a curve, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the relevant moment.

I Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly. **Important:** the level 1 alert is never displayed when the "Close" trigger threshold has been selected.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane. The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu. You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

- "Distant",
- "Normal",
- "Close".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Without audio system

- ☞ In the "DRIVE ASSIST" menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate "COLLISION ALT" (Automatic emergency braking).
- ☞ Then change the alert threshold.

With audio system



- ☞ In the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, activate/deactivate "Auto. emergency braking".

- ☞ Then change the alert threshold.

With touch screen



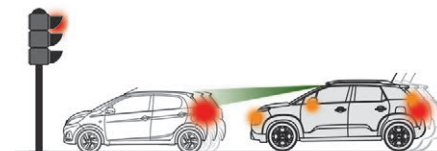
- ☞ In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, select the "Vehicle settings" tab, then "Security" and activate/deactivate "Collision risk and auto. braking".

- ☞ Then change the alert threshold.
- ☞ Press "Confirm" to save the change.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Using the camera, this function acts on the vehicle's braking system.



If the camera has confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.



Important: if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you should take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to add to or finish the automatic braking action.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

i The point at which braking is triggered may be adjusted according to the driving actions from the driver, such as movement of the steering wheel or pressing the accelerator pedal.

i Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

! With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal down to stop the vehicle from starting off again.

Specific conditions for operation

The vehicle's speed must be between 3 mph and 53 mph (5 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.
The vehicle's speed must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stopped vehicle is detected.
The vehicle's speed must not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
The ESC system must not be defective.
The ASR system must not be deactivated.
All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start-up.
The system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Without audio system

☞ In the "**DRIVE ASSIST**" menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate "**COLLISION ALT**" (Automatic emergency braking).

With audio system



☞ In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Auto. emergency braking**".

With touch screen



☞ In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Security**" and activate/deactivate "**Automatic emergency braking**".

Malfunction

! There may be interference in the operation of the camera or it may not work at all in the following situations:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera masked (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could mask the camera's view.



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Fatigue detection system

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

! The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Do not take the wheel if you are tired.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Without audio system

☞ In the **"DRIVE ASSIST"** menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate **"VIGILANCE ALT"** (Fatigue Detection System).

With audio system



☞ In the **"Personalisation-configuration"** menu, activate/deactivate **"Fatigue Detection System"**.

With touch screen



☞ In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the **"Vehicle settings"** tab, then **"Security"** and activate/deactivate **"Fatigue Detection System"**.

Driving time warning



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).



Pensez à faire une pause

This alert takes the form of a display message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

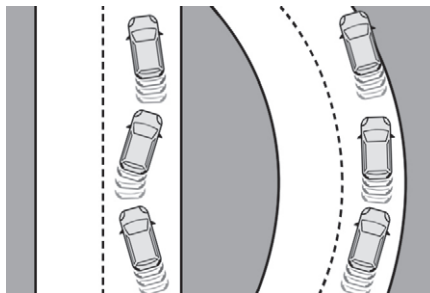
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver inattention alert

Depending on version, the "Driving time warning" may be combined with the "Driver inattention alert".



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).



Severely vigilant

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

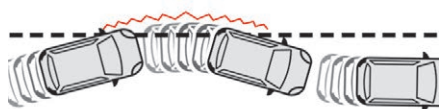
- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, masked (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could mask the camera's view.

Lane Departure Warning System

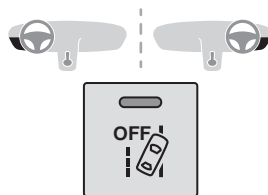
System which uses a camera to recognise solid or broken lines and detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the road.

The camera analyses the image then, if the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction. This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



! This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance.

Manual deactivation/reactivation



By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start-up.



The function is deactivated by a long press on this button.

The indicator lamp for the button indicates the status of the function:

- Off: the function is activated.
- On: the function is deactivated.

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection



You are alerted by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active.

Malfunction



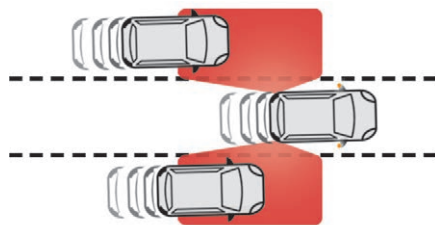
The flashing and then constant illumination of the warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault in the system.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

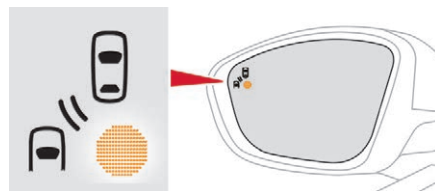
i Detection may be impeded:

- if the road markings are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the road markings and the road surface,
- if the windscreen is dirty,
- in certain weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (low sun, leaving a tunnel, etc.).

Blind spot monitoring



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

! This driving aid system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance.

Activation/Deactivation

The system can be activated or deactivated from the vehicle configuration menu.



In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the **"Vehicle settings"** tab, then **"Security"** and activate/deactivate **"Blind spot sensors"**.



This indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

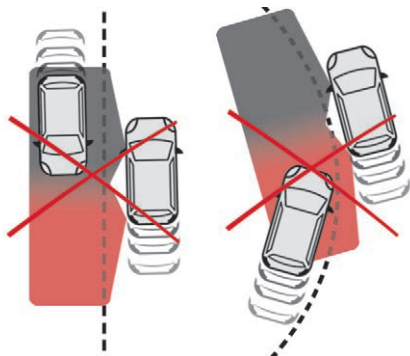
i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

Operation

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, cycle – is detected.

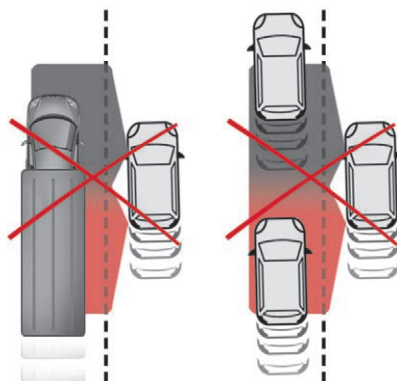
The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- traffic is flowing normally,
- when overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- oncoming traffic,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,



- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) that is detected in the rear blind spot but is also present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Malfuction



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning lamp coming on and the display of a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.). In particular, driving on a wet surface or the transition from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. the presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot is interpreted as a vehicle). In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

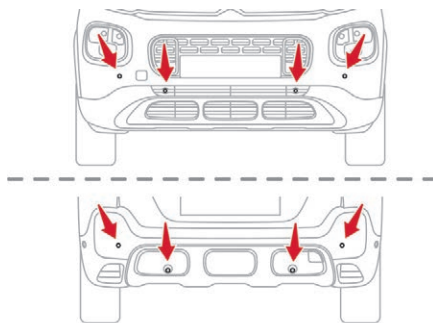
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

i High pressure jet wash

When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Parking assistance



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (examples: pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper. Certain types of obstacle (examples: post, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

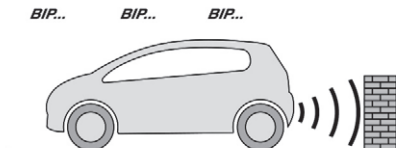
Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.

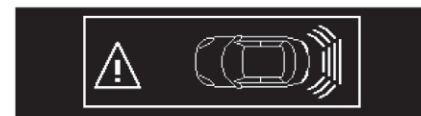
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle remains below 6 mph (10 km/h). The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

- The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation

The system is activated and deactivated from the vehicle configuration menu or via the button on the dashboard (depending on version).

With/without audio system



- Press this button; the button indicator lamp lights up to confirm deactivation of the function.

With touch screen



- In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Parking sensors**".

- The system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towbar (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).

Malfunction



- If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

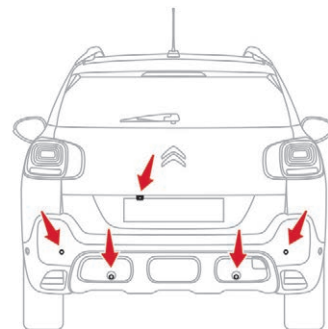
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

- In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

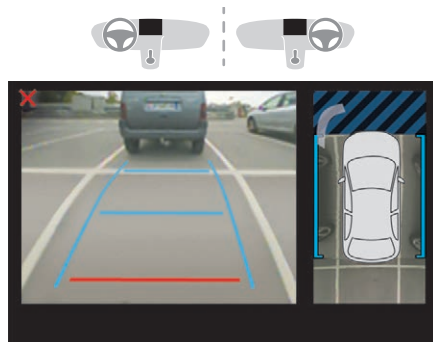
High pressure jet wash

- When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

Top Rear Vision camera



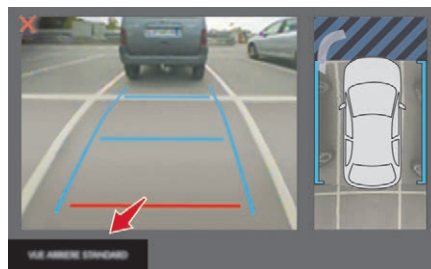
With the engine running, and as soon as the reverse gear is engaged, this system allows two views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using a rear camera.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:

- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.

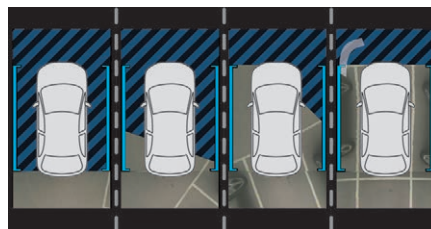


AUTO mode is activated by default.

In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.

You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

Principle of operation



Using the rear camera, the near surroundings of the vehicle are recorded whilst manoeuvring at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the blue brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.

This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.

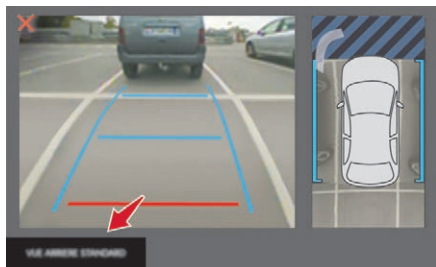
This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

! This system is a visual aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i The images provided by the camera may be distorted by the relief. In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

Activation

Activation is automatic on engaging reverse at a speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h).



You can choose the display mode at any time by pressing on this area.

On display of the sub-menu, select one of the four views:



"Standard view".



"180° view".



"Zoom view".



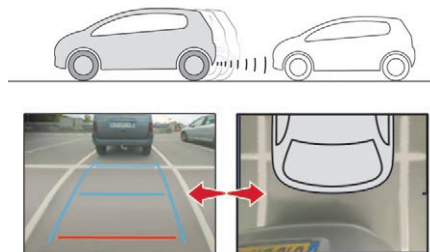
"AUTO mode".

AUTO

- i** The function will be deactivated:
- If a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towbar (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).
 - Above about 6 mph (10 km/h).
 - On opening the tailgate.
 - When shifting out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
 - By pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

! Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly.
Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

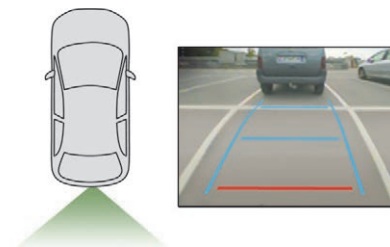
AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view to a view from above, as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

Standard view

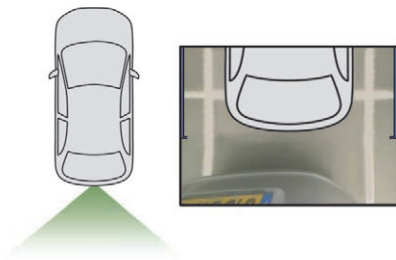


The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines represent the width of your vehicle with the mirrors unfolded; the direction changes with the position of the steering wheel. The red line represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper, the two blue lines 1 m and 2 m respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

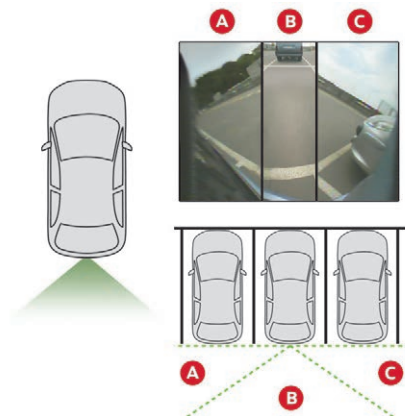
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre. It is made up of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**. This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Quick start mode



This mode displays, as quickly as possible, the contextual view (left-hand part) and the view from above the vehicle. A message is displayed advising you to check your vehicle's surroundings before starting the manoeuvre.

Park Assist

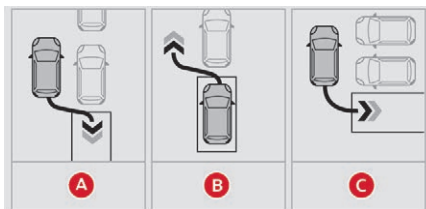
This system provides active assistance with parking: it detects a parking space then operates the steering system to park in this space. With a **manual gearbox**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and clutch. With an **automatic gearbox**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes and gears.

During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

! This manoeuvring assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear throughout the manoeuvre. In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

i The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.



The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

- A. Entry into a parallel parking space.
- B. Exit from a parallel parking space.
- C. Bay parking.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could block the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) - Risk of injury!

i When the Park Assist is active, it prevents the Stop & Start going into STOP mode. In STOP mode, activating Park Assist restarts the engine.

i The Park Assist system takes control of the assistance for a maximum of 4 manoeuvre cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles. If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly, you should then take control of the steering to carry out the manoeuvre.

! The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed on the touch screen.



The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.



The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take control of the steering.

! You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

i The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away. If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

! Activation of Park Assist deactivates the blind spot monitoring function.

Operation

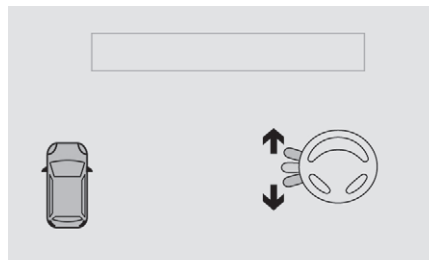
Assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres

☞ When you wish to park, select "**Park Assist**" in the "**Driving functions**" tab of the touch screen **Driving/Vehicle** menu to activate the function.

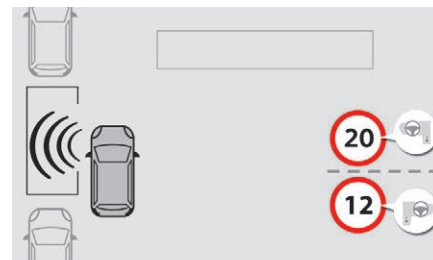


☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter parallel parking space**" on the touch screen.

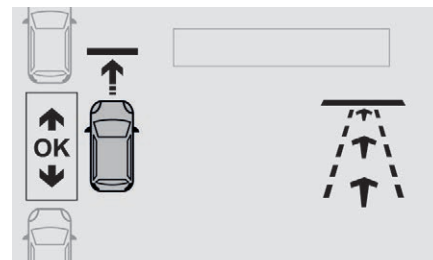
i For entry into a parallel parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



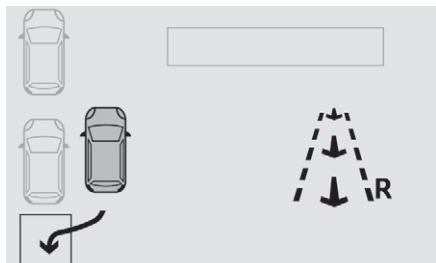
☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



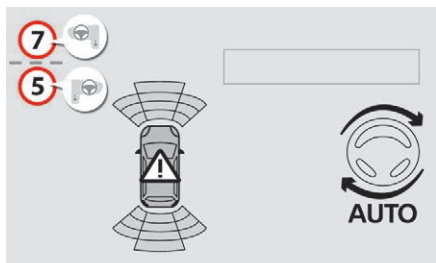
☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



- ☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



- ☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" function until completion of the manoeuvre is indicated.



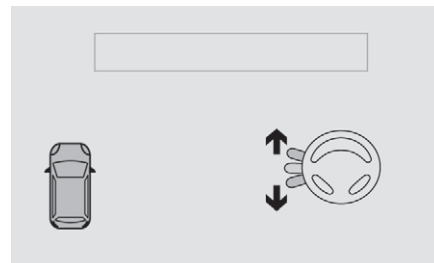
The end of the manoeuvre is confirmed by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance when leaving a parallel parking space

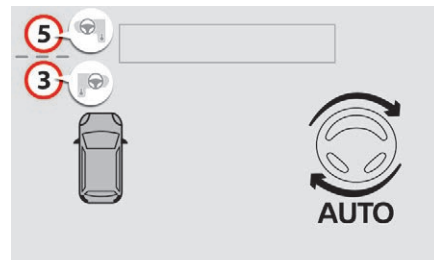
- ☞ When you want to leave a parallel parking space, start the engine.
- ☞ Select "**Park Assist**" in the "**Driving functions**" tab of the touch screen **Driving/Vehicle** menu to activate the function.



- ☞ Press "**Exit parking slot**" on the touch screen.



- ☞ Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.
- ☞ Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.



- ☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Park assist" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



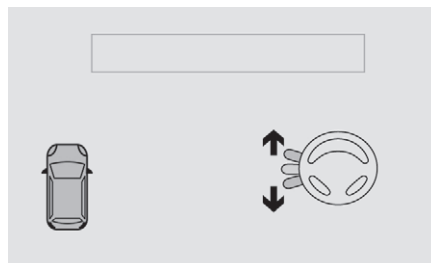
The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space. The end of the manoeuvre is confirmed by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance with bay parking manoeuvres

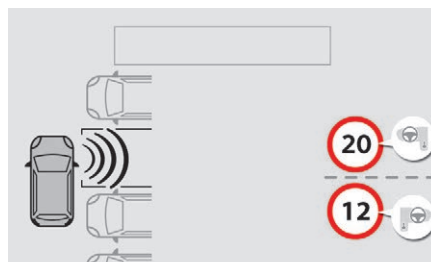
- Select **"Park Assist"** in the **"Driving functions"** tab of the touch screen **Driving/Vehicle** menu to activate the function.



- Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select **"Enter bay parking space"** on the touch screen.



- Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.

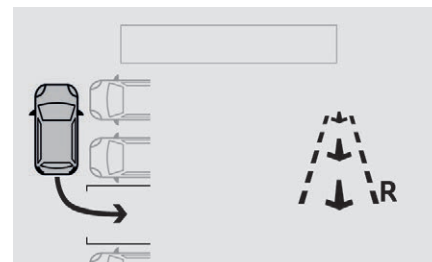


- Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

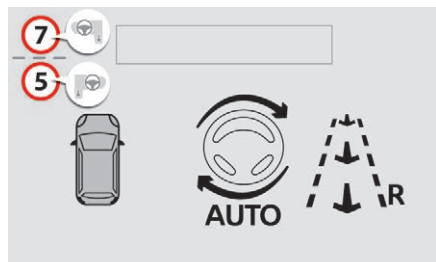
When several successive bays are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



- Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



- Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" function until completion of the manoeuvre is indicated.



The end of the manoeuvre is confirmed by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

During a bay parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.

During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the Top Rear Vision Camera function may come into operation. This facilitates monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle by displaying additional information on the touch screen. For more information on the **Top Rear Vision Camera**, refer to the corresponding section.

- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
- on opening the driver's door,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

Deactivation is confirmed by a message and an audible signal.

The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.

If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver must reactivate it to resume the current measurement.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.

The system is deactivated automatically:

- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre,
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,

Deactivation

The system is switched off automatically:

- when towing a trailer, connected electrically,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 45 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Malfunctions



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

STOP

In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space. Any object projecting beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (e.g. a ladder on the roof or a towball) will not be taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.



In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by road dirt, ice or snow.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

High pressure jet washing

When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving. It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.** The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.



The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres worsens road-holding, lengthens braking distances, causes premature wear of the tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.



The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).

Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by continuous illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on equipment, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
 - ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- or
- ☞ In case of a puncture, use the temporary tyre repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressures of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

The system must be reinitialised with the **ignition on** and the vehicle stationary:

- in the vehicle configuration menu for vehicles fitted with a touch screen.
- via the button on the dashboard for vehicles without a touch screen.

With/Without audio system



- ☞ Hold this button down.


Reinitialisation is confirmed by a high-pitched audible signal.

A deep tone audible signal indicates that the reinitialisation has not been carried out.

i Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

With touch screen



 In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Reset under-inflation detection**".

 Select "**Yes**" to confirm.

A message is displayed and an audible signal sounds to confirm the reset operation.

Malfunction



The flashing and then constant illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault in the system.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN prefers **TOTAL**



**FILL UP WITH
CONFIDENCE
WITH TOTAL QUARTZ
LUBRICANTS**



For more than 45 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation. It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment. TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products during motorsport races in extreme conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants to maintain your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

- E5** Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.
- E10**

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

- B7** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



- B10** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

- XTL** Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

- B20** The use of B20 or B30 fuel that meets standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".
- B30**

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could entail an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact a dealer.

Fuel tank

Tank capacity: approximately 45 litres.

! If you have put the wrong fuel in your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message.

When it first comes on, **about 5 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.

This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops and approaches "0".

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

i For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

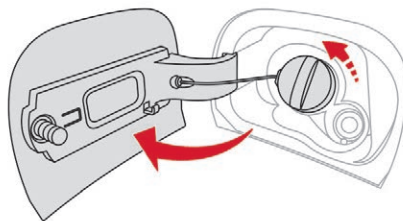
Refilling

A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine.

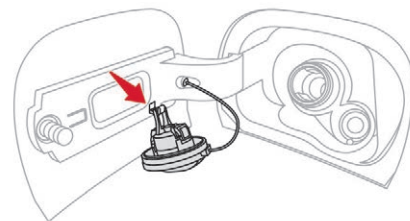
Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.

To refuel in complete safety:

☞ **You must switch off the engine.**



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear-central part of the filler flap to open it.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.
- ☞ Turn the filler cap to the left.



- ☞ Remove the cap and place it on its support (on the filler flap).
- ☞ Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Fill up the tank completely, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off** of the nozzle; this could cause malfunctions.

Once you have finished refuelling:

- ☞ Refit the filler cap.
- ☞ Turn it to the right.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it.

! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

Fuel cut-off

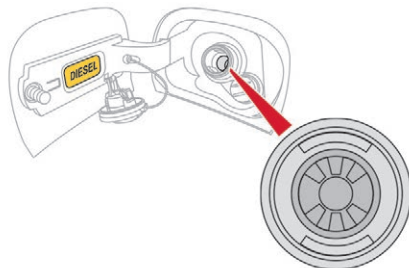
Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale)

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Installation tips

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and, if necessary, put wheel chocks against the wheels to prevent your vehicle from sliding.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few seconds, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with aluminium alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

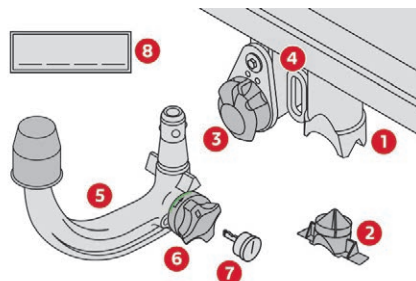
Original tyre size	Chain types
195/65 R15	Maximum 9 mm link
195/60 R16	
205/60 R16	Cannot be fitted with chains
215/50 R17	

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

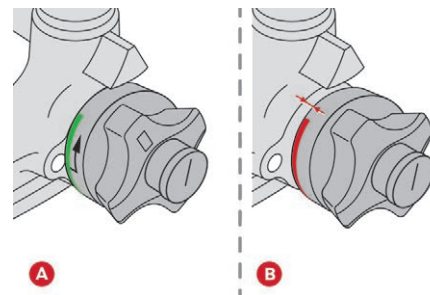
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towbar system.

Presentation



1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Connection socket.
4. Safety eye.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking/unlocking star wheel.
7. Key lock.
8. Key reference label.



- A. Locked position** (green mark opposite the white mark); the star wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).
- B. Unlocked position** (red mark opposite the white mark); the star wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

! Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

i To know the **Technical data**, and, in particular, the towable weights for your vehicle, refer to the corresponding section. For advice on driving safely when **Towing a trailer**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Before each use

Check that the ball joint is correctly fitted, verifying the follow points:

- the **green** mark on the star wheel is in line with the **white** mark on the towball,
- the star wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**),
- the security key lock is on and the key removed; the star wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

If the towball is not locked, the trailer can detach – Risk of accident!

! During use

Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball. Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle – the Gross Train Weight or GTW.

It is essential that the maximum authorised load be complied with on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may detach from the vehicle - Risk of accident!

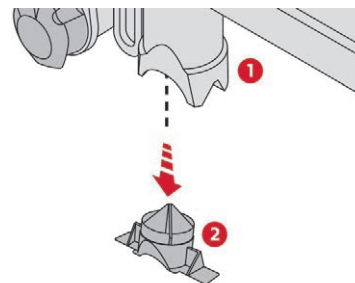
Check that the trailer lamps work correctly.

Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.

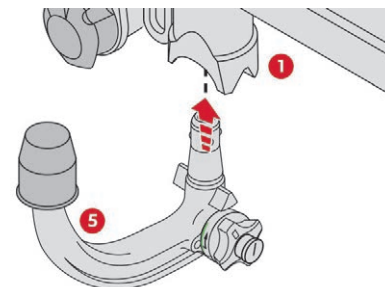
For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Following use

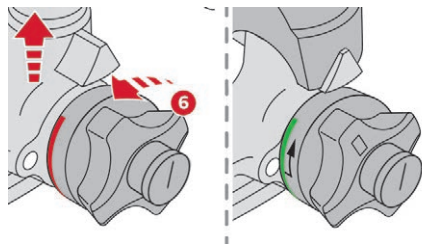
When travelling without a trailer or load on a towbar-mounted carrier, the towball must be removed and the protective plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly where the towball might obscure visibility of the number plate or its lighting.

Fitting the towball

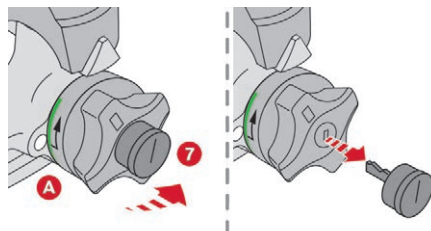
- ☞ Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug **2** from the carrier **1**.



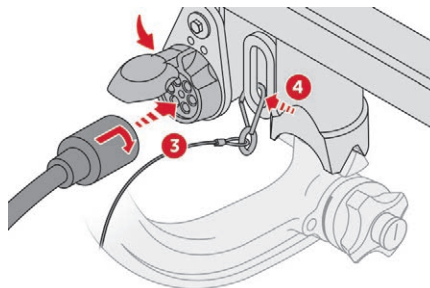
- ☞ Insert the end of the towball **5** into the carrier **1** and push it upwards; the locking will take place automatically.



- ☞ The star wheel **6** turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise; take care to keep your hands clear!

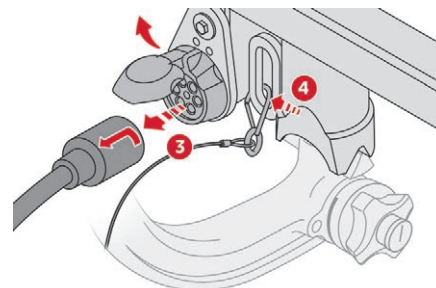


- ☞ Check that the mechanism has correctly locked into place and that the **green** mark on the star wheel is in line with the **white** mark on the towball (position **A**).
- ☞ Close the lock **7** using the key.
- ☞ Always remove the key. The key cannot be removed when the lock is open.
- ☞ Clip the cap onto the lock.

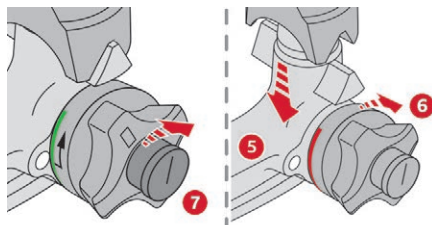


- ☞ Remove the protective cover from the towball.
- ☞ Attach the trailer to the towball.
- ☞ Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- ☞ Tilt the connection socket **3** forwards to place it in position.
- ☞ Insert the trailer plug and give it a quarter turn to connect it to the connection socket **3** of the carrier.

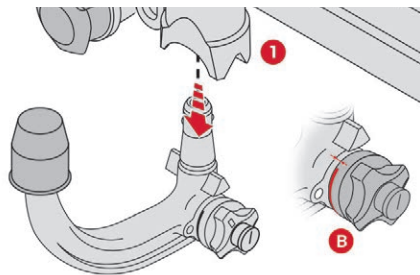
Removing the towball



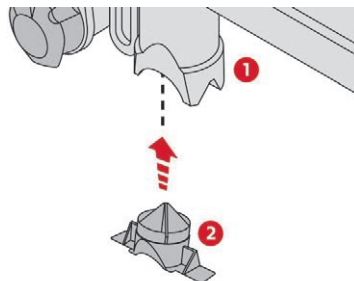
- ☞ Give a quarter turn and pull the trailer plug to disconnect it from connection socket **3** of the carrier.
- ☞ Tilt the connection socket **3** to the left to stow it away.
- ☞ Detach the cable on the trailer from the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- ☞ Detach the trailer from the towball.
- ☞ Refit the protective cover to the towball.



- Remove the cap from the lock.
- Insert the key into the lock 7.
- Open the lock using the key.
- Hold the towball 5 firmly in one hand; using the other hand, pull and turn star wheel 6 fully in a clockwise direction; do not release the star wheel.



- Extract the towball from the bottom of its carrier 1.
- Release the star wheel; this automatically stops in the unlocked position and the **red** mark on the star wheel lines up with the **white** mark on the towball (position B).



- Refit protective plug 2 to carrier 1.
- Carefully stow the towball in its bag away from knocks and dirt.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean. Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

- i** Apply the label provided to a clearly visible area, close to the carrier or in the boot. Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towbar system.

Towing device

Load distribution

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum load which can be towed must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

- i** Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by CITROËN. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions. Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towbar is used.

! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the hands-free kit of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,

- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

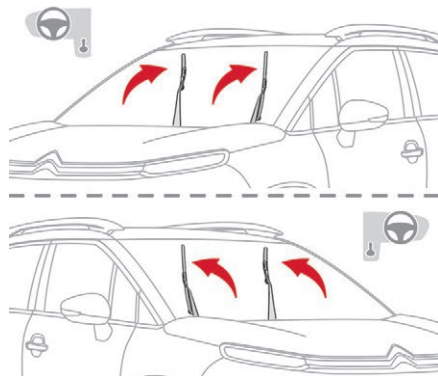
Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Changing a wiper blade

Before removing a front wiper blade



- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.
- or
- ☞ Beyond one minute after switching off the ignition, straighten the arms manually.

Removing

- ☞ Lift the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Refitting

- ☞ Position and clip the new wiper blade to the arm.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After refitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper control stalk again to park the wiper blades.

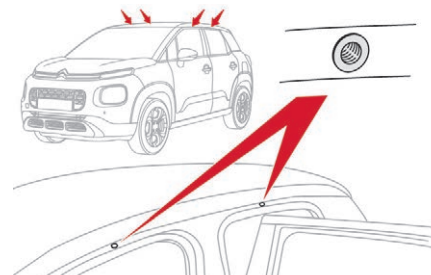
! The changing of an arm must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Roof bars

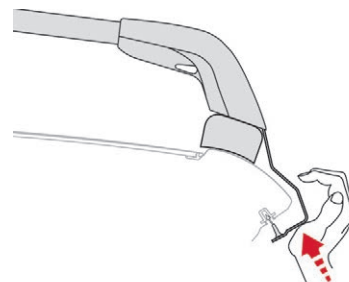
! For safety reasons and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.

i Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Version without longitudinal bars

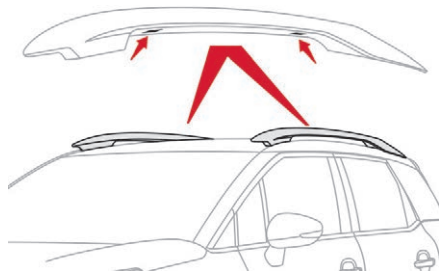


When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. These points are masked by the vehicle doors when closed.



The roof bar fixings include a lug to be fitted into the hole at each fixing point.

Version with longitudinal bars



You must fit the transverse bars to the longitudinal bars at the fixing points under the longitudinal bars.

! Sunroof

Check that the load does not pass below the roof bars so that it does not impede the movements of the sunroof.

! Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Secure the load securely and fit a warning flag if it overhangs the vehicle.
- ☞ Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds (the stability of the vehicle may be affected).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

i Maximum load, distributed over the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm:

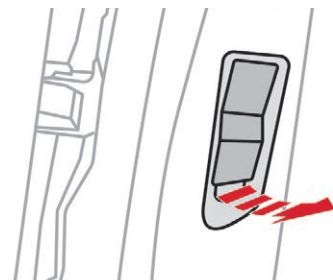
- without longitudinal bars: **50 kg**,
- with longitudinal bars: **45 kg**.

As this value may be changed, please verify the maximum load quoted in the user guide supplied with the roof bars. If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

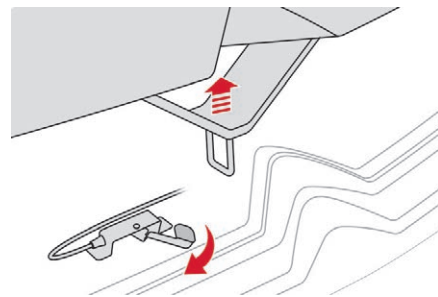
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

Bonnet Opening

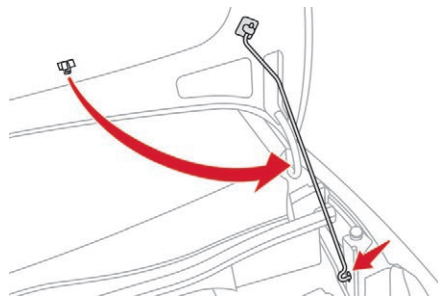
- ☞ Open the left-hand front door.



- ☞ Pull the lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.



- ☞ Shift the lever to the left and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.



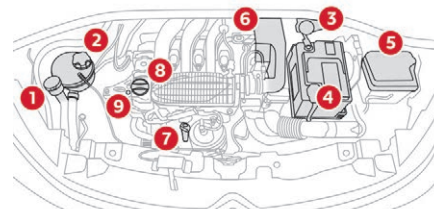
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

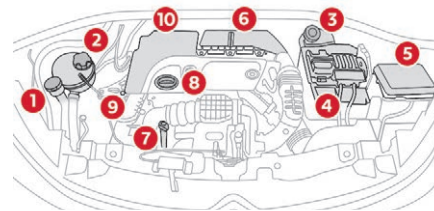
! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engines

Petrol



Diesel



These engines are examples provided as a guide.

The locations of the following elements may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.

3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point.
10. Priming pump*.

* Depending on engine.

! The Diesel circuit is under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

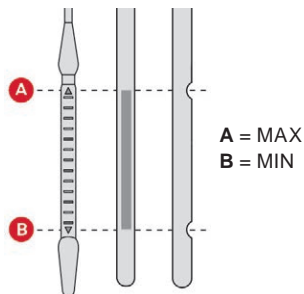
i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the mark **A** or below the mark **B**, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine cool.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the coolant.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Fluid specification

The fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up the fluid when necessary.

Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).

Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)



The additive tank minimum level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue level

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up with AdBlue.

For more information on **AdBlue®** and the **SCR system**, and, in particular, topping it up, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary.**

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary.**

i A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the constant illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by an alert message.

i As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels** and particularly on the level of Diesel additive, refer to the corresponding section. On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake

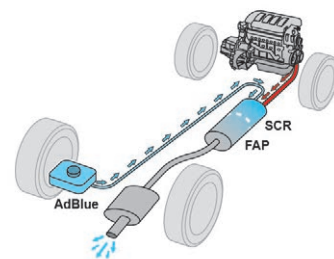


If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products. After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)



SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the oxides of nitrogen (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 15 litres.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is emptied completely.

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage of your vehicle between two services is greater than around 12,000 miles (20,000 km), it will be necessary to top up the AdBlue®.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 680 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, refer to the corresponding section.

i Freezing of AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

Topping up with AdBlue®

i Before topping up, please read the following warnings carefully.

Precautions for use

The AdBlue® solution is based on urea. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (at high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would become contaminated.

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute AdBlue® with water.
Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

Containers are available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue pumps specially designed for private vehicles and light goods vehicles.

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at ambient temperature.

! Never keep AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Procedure

In cold weather, before performing the top-up, ensure that the temperature is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into the tank.

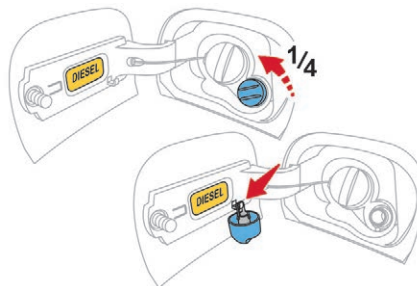
Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Before topping up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key to switch off the engine.

or

☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "START/STOP" button to stop the engine.



☞ With the vehicle unlocked, open the fuel filler flap.

☞ Turn the blue cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

☞ Release the blue cap.

Refilling

☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container. After first checking the use-by date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container or bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue tank.

Or

☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! Important:

- To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:
 - To do a top-up of between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.

Or

- If filling in a service station, stop after the first automatic shut-off of the nozzle.
- If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

☞ Perform the operations in reverse order.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment.**

Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

i For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel fuel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

Other HDi engines

(Except BlueHDi version)

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel fuel.

- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.



- ☞ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then start the engine.
- ☞ Put the cover in place and clip it in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

Temporary puncture repair kit

i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

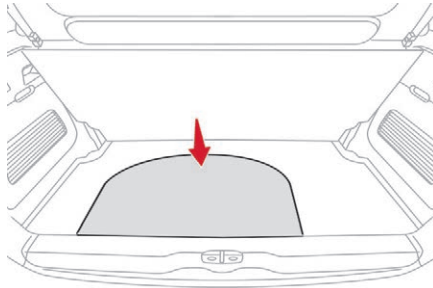
Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

i **Only** the 12 V socket **at the front** of the vehicle allows the compressor to be connected for long enough to repair or inflate the vehicle tyre. The other 12 V sockets of the vehicle are not designed to be used with the compressor.

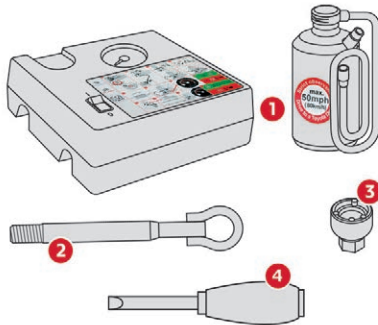
i **Under-inflation detection**
After repair of the tyre, the warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

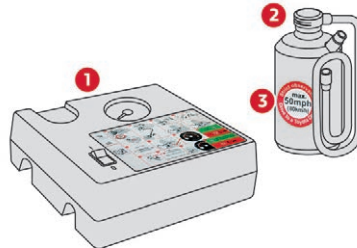
List of tools



1. Temporary puncture repair kit.
Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box or in the tool box) (depending on version).
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
3. Removable towing eye.
Allows the cover plate on the front or rear bumper to be opened to screw in the removable towing eye 3.
4. Flat blade screwdriver.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

Composition of the kit



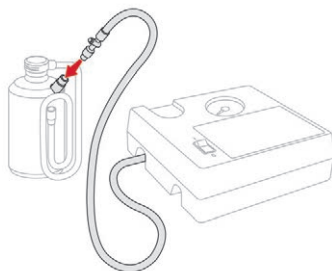
1. 12 V compressor, with built-in pressure gauge.
2. Bottle of sealant, with built-in hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

! Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

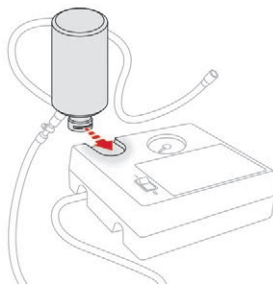
Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



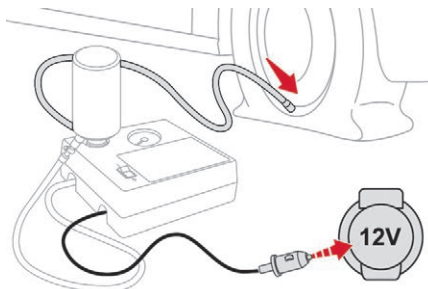
- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

! Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.



- ☞ Turn over the sealant bottle and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired and keep it in a clean place.



- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



- ☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

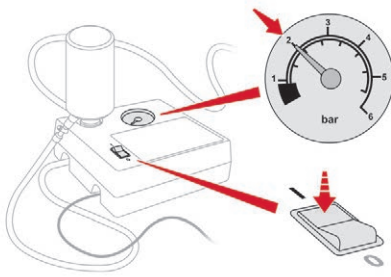
195/60R16 89H

	bar	2.2	2.5
	kPa	150	170
ECO	bar	2.4	2.6
	kPa	165	180
	bar	2.6	2.7
	kPa	180	190
	bar	2.7	
	kPa	190	
	bar	4.2	
	kPa	300	

125/65R16 99M

The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



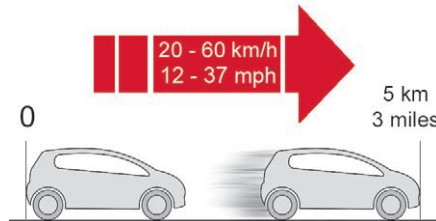
- ☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch to the "I" position until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the hose of the valve during this operation (risk of splatters).

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Replace the cap on the valve.
- ☞ Remove the kit.

- ☞ Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date is marked on the bottle. Do not discard the bottle by the roadside after use, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



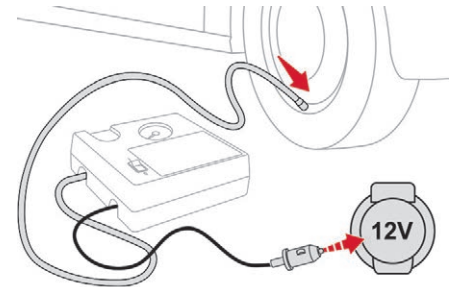
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

i You can always use the compressor, without injecting the sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

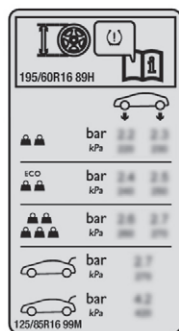
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



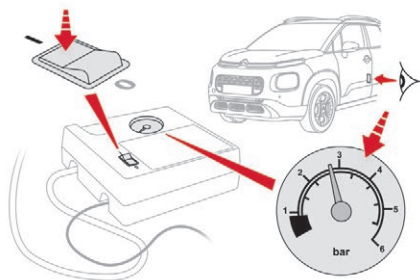
- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.


In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



-  Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "I" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

- !** If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Do not drive more than 120 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

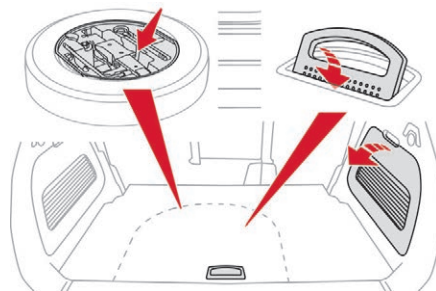
! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

- i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools

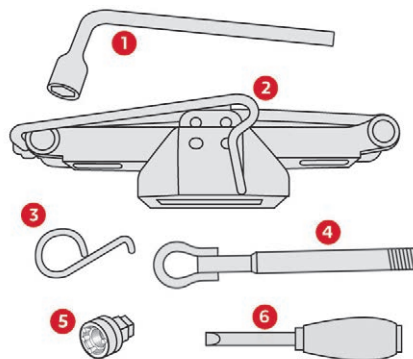


The tools are located in the boot. Depending on version, they are either under the floor or behind the removable grille of the right compartment.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ then, depending on version, lift the floor using the grip, remove it and remove the carpet.
- ☞ or, open the removable grille to the right by pulling from the top.

List of tools



1. Wheelbrace.
For removing the wheel bolts.
2. Jack with integrated handle.
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover removal tool.
Removes the central bolt covers on alloy wheels.
4. Removable towing eye.
5. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box or in the tool box) (depending on country of sale).
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

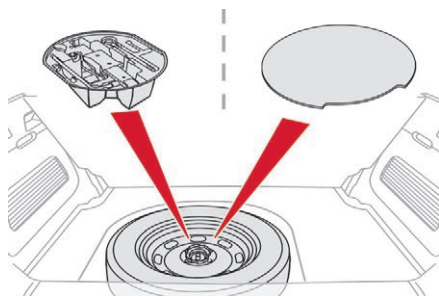
6. Flat blade screwdriver.
Allows the cover plate on the front or rear bumper to be opened to screw in the removable towing eye 4.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

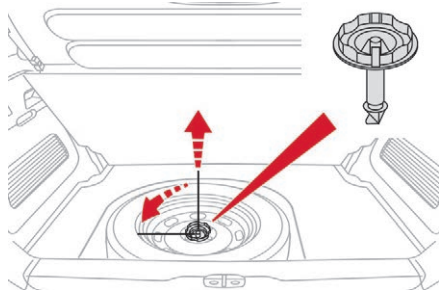
! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it. The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot, under the floor.

Removing the wheel

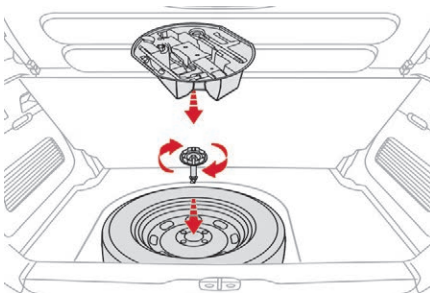


- ☞ Unclip and remove the tool storage box or pull out the polystyrene cover plate (depending on version).
- ☞ Unscrew the central nut.

- ☞ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.



- ☞ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten the central nut to retain the wheel correctly.
- ☞ Clip the tool storage box back into place or reinsert the polystyrene cover plate (depending on version).

i If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

Removing a wheel

! Parking the vehicle

Stop the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* so as to block the wheels.

Check that the parking brake warning lamp comes on fixed in the instrument panel.

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait in a safe place.

Make sure that the jack is correctly positioned at one of the vehicle's jacking points.

Incorrect use of the jack could cause the vehicle to collapse.

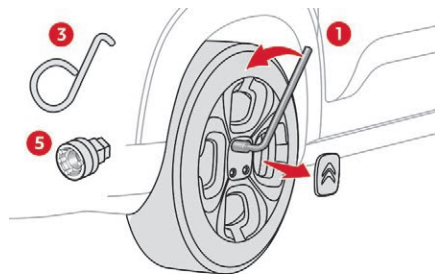
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

* Position **P** for the automatic gearbox

Wheel with hub cap

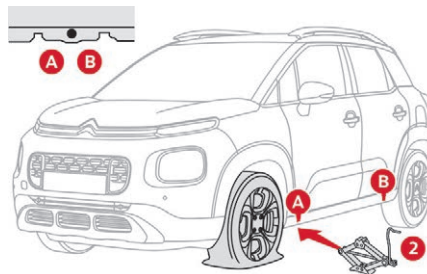
When refitting the wheel, after tightening the wheel bolts, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

List of operations

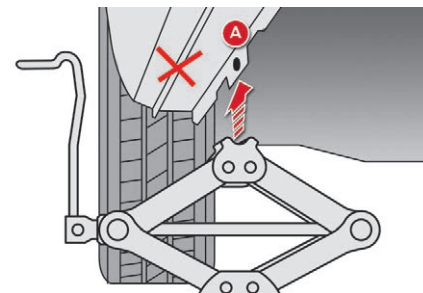
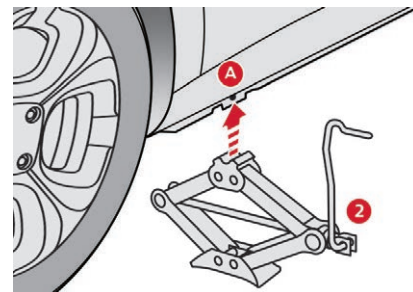


- ☞ If your vehicle has steel wheels, remove the hub cap.
- ☞ If your vehicle has alloy wheels, remove the central bolt covers using tool 3.
- ☞ If your vehicle has security wheel bolts, fit security bolt socket 5 to wheelbrace 1 to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using wheelbrace 1 only.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse – Risk of injury!
Take care to place the jack only at the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the jack head is centred at the contact point on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack collapsing – Risk of injury!

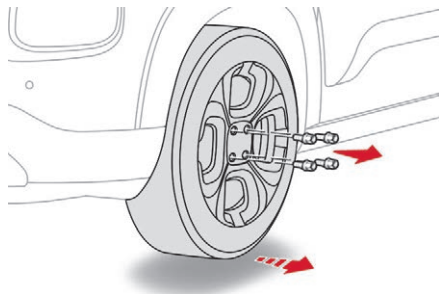


- ☞ Place the foot of the jack 2 on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend the jack 2 until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used, having the contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

In the event of a breakdown

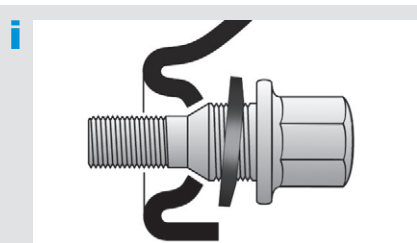
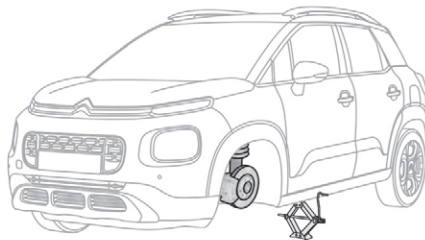


- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

i Stowing the damaged wheel

Since the width of the spare wheel is smaller than the width of the wheels of the vehicle, in the event of a puncture, the punctured wheel must be stored in the boot: use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.

Fitting a wheel



Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

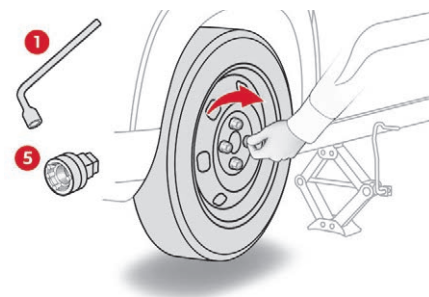
! After changing a wheel

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with the "space-saver" type spare wheel fitted.

Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.

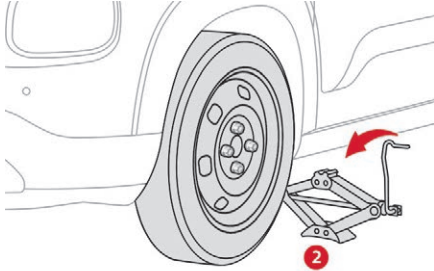
Have the punctured wheel checked. After inspection, the technician will let you know if the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

List of operations

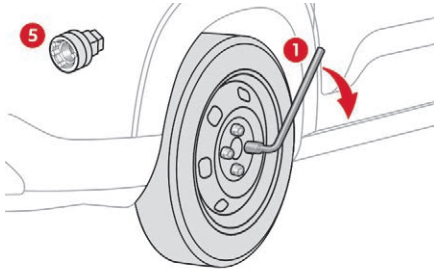


- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ☞ If your vehicle is so equipped, pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 5.

- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace 1 only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold the jack 2 and detach it.



- ☞ If your vehicle is so equipped, tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 5.
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace 1 only.
- ☞ Store the tools in the box or in the right-hand compartment (depending on version).

Changing a bulb

- ! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
 - ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
 - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
 - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

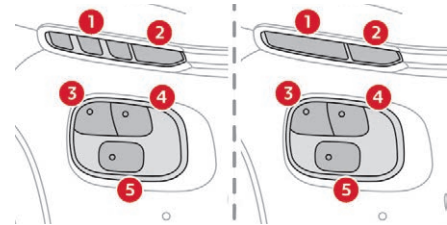
- ! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
 - ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
- It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
- Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

! Light emitting diodes (LED)

For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

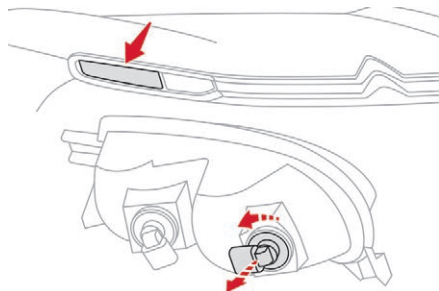
Front lamps



1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (W21/5W or LED)*.
2. Direction indicators (PY21W).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
4. Main beam headlamps (H7).
5. Foglamps (H8).

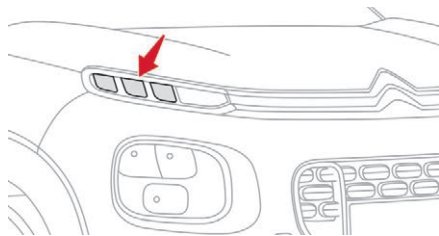
* LED: light emitting diodes.

Daytime running lamps/sidelamps



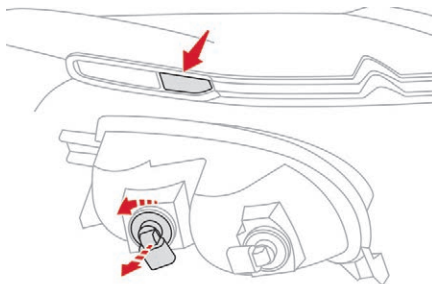
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and extract it.
 - ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.
- To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LED)



For the replacement of this type of diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Direction indicators



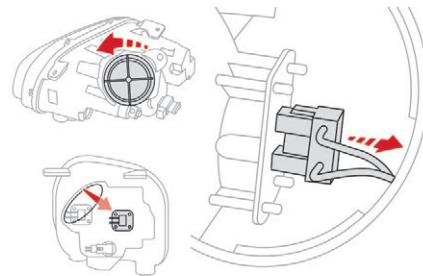
- i** Quicker flashing of the direction indicator (left or right) indicates that one of the lamps on the corresponding side has failed.

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and extract it.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

- i** Amber colour bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical colour and specifications.

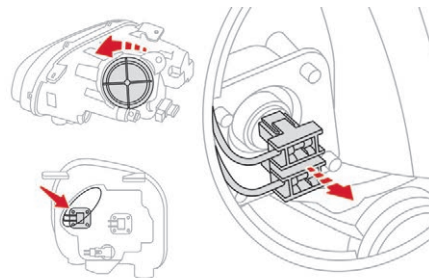
Dipped beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the protective cover by unscrewing it.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Extract the bulb by pulling and replace it.

To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order, **ensuring you position the lamp lugs properly.**

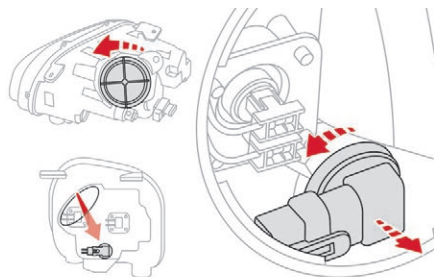
Main beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the protective cover by unscrewing it.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Extract the bulb by pulling and replace it.

To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order, **ensuring you position the lamp lugs properly.**

Foglamps



- ☞ Remove the protective cover by unscrewing it.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Turn the lamp a quarter turn anti-clockwise, pull it out and replace it.

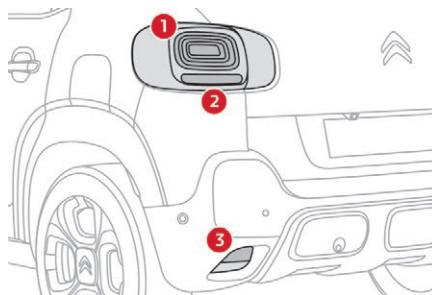
To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters



For the replacement of this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

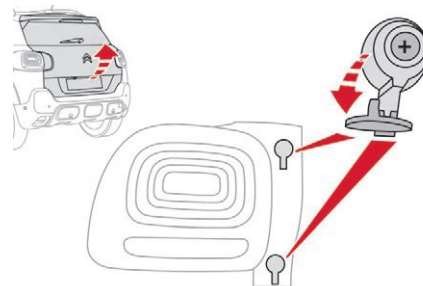
Rear lamps



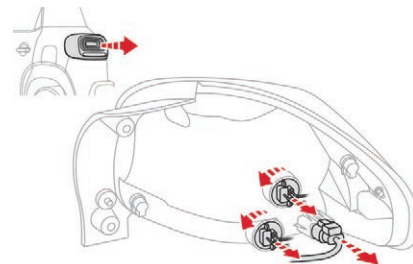
1. Brake lamps/sidelamps (W21/5W).
2. Direction indicators (WY21W).
3. Reversing lamp (P21W) or foglamp (P21W).

Changing bulbs

These bulbs are changed from outside the boot.



- ☞ Identify the defective lamp then open the boot.
- ☞ Using a thin, flat blade screwdriver, unclip the two plastic covers, then flip them down.
- ☞ Unscrew the two fixing screws located in each opening.

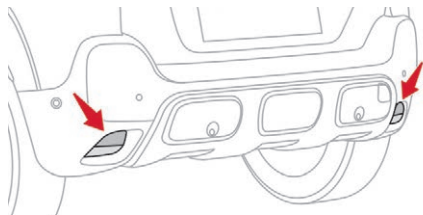


- ☞ Unclip the lamp unit and carefully extract it pulling straight towards the outside.
- ☞ Hold the lamp unit and disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder of the faulty bulb a quarter turn anti-clockwise and pull it out.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

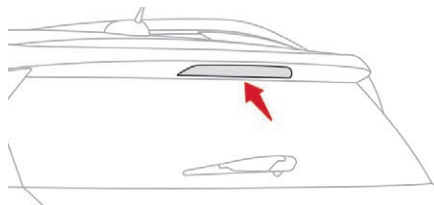
i Make sure to engage the lamp unit in its guides while keeping it in line with the vehicle. Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp.

Reversing lamp and foglamp



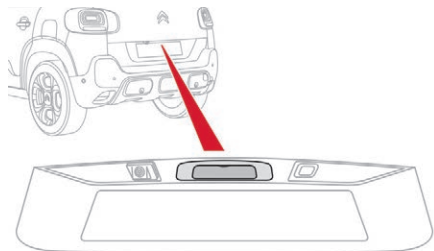
For the replacement of this type of bulb, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Third brake lamp (LED)



For the replacement of this type of bulb, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Number plate lamps (LED)

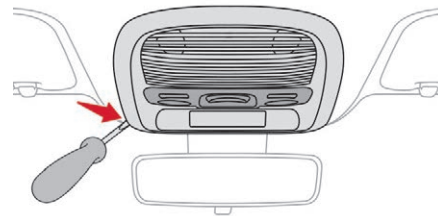


For the replacement of this type of bulb, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior lighting

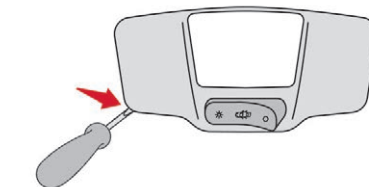
Courtesy lamps (W5W)

Front courtesy lamp



- ☞ Using a thin, flat blade screwdriver, unclip the entire console surrounding the courtesy lamp.
- ☞ Pull the faulty bulb out and change it.
- ☞ Put in place the console around the courtesy lamp and clip it correctly.

Rear courtesy lamp



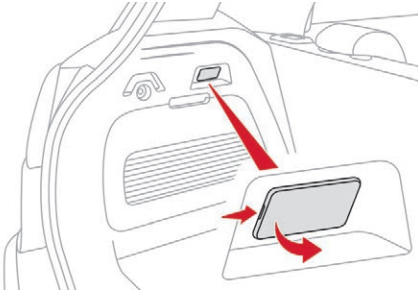
- ☞ Using a thin, flat blade screwdriver, unclip the courtesy lamp.

- ☞ Pull the faulty bulb out and change it.
- ☞ Fit the console back and clip it in place.

Courtesy lamp with LEDs

For the replacement of LEDs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Boot (W5W)

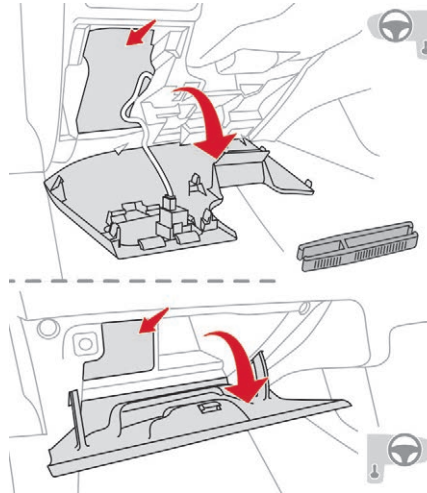


- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small flat blade screwdriver.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- ☞ Put the unit back in place.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools

The extraction tweezers are located behind the dashboard fusebox cover.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over,
- ☞ Take the tweezers from the housing.

Changing a fuse

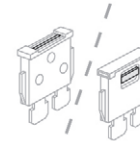
Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the existing allocation tables and diagrams.

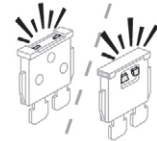
To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ always replace the defective fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause a malfunction (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good



Faulty



Tweezers

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

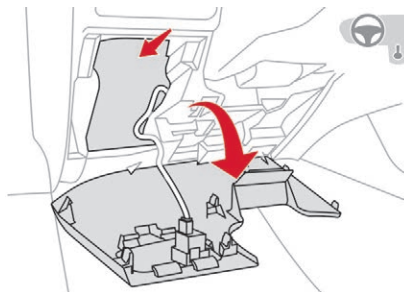
i Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

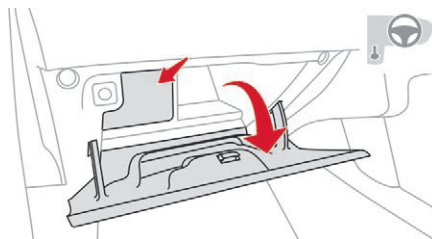
Fuses in the dashboard

Access to the fuses



The 2 fuseboxes are located in the lower part of the dashboard, below the steering wheel.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.



The two fuseboxes are located in the lower part of the dashboard, in the glove box.

- ☞ Open the glove box.
- ☞ Unclip the fusebox protection cover.

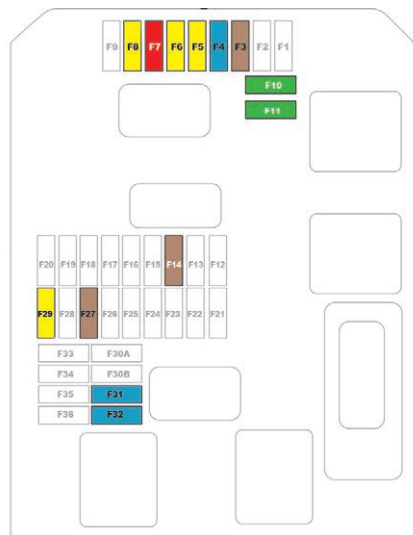
Upper fusebox



Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F2	10	Heated mirrors.
F3	30	Front one-touch electric windows.
F4	5	Automatic folding door mirrors.
F5	30	Rear one-touch electric windows.
F6	25	Front heated seats.
F7	15	Front electric windows.
F8	20	Audio amplifier.
F10	25	Panoramic roof.
F12	20	Sunroof.

In the event of a breakdown

Lower fusebox

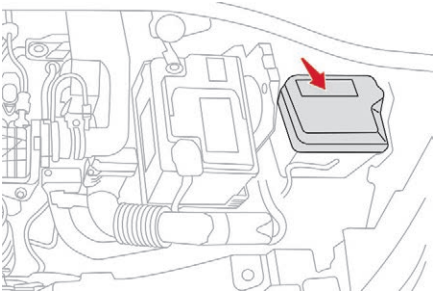


Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F3	5	Trailer power supply.
F4	15	Horn.
F5 – F6	20	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F7	10	Rear 12 V socket.
F8	20	Rear windscreen wiper.
F10 – F11	30	Locking/unlocking of the doors and fuel filler flap.
F14	5	Alarm, telematic unit.
F27	5	Alarm (preparation).
F29	20	Telematic radio.
F31	15	Radio (retrofitting).
F32	15	Front 12 V socket.

Fuses under the bonnet

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F15	10	Front left foglamp.
F16	10	Front right foglamp.
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F29	40	Windscreen wipers (front).

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries



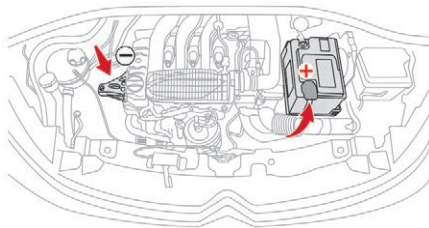
Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet by activating the internal control, then the external control,
- ☞ lift the bonnet, then hold it in place with its stay.

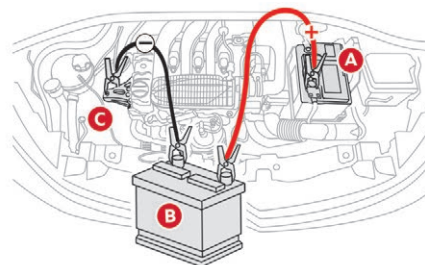
(+) Positive terminal.
It has a quick-release clamp.

(-) Negative terminal.
The battery (-) terminal is not accessible, use the engine mounting.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a back-up battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the back-up battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the back-up battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the back-up battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine turn.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the positive terminal (+), if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you use your vehicle mostly for short journeys.
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

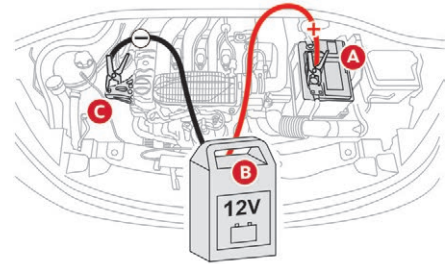
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you plan to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

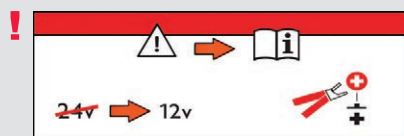
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the positive (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

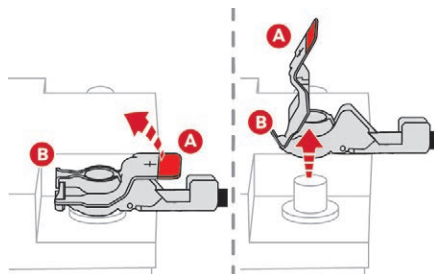
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, sunroof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

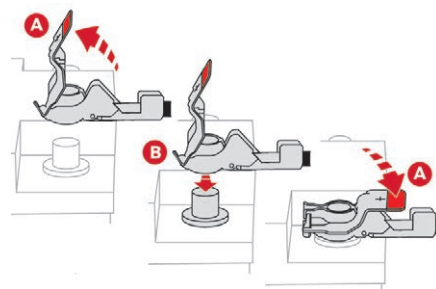
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

i For right-hand drive vehicles, when the total distance recorder has reached 37 miles (60 km), it is necessary to wait around 15 minutes before starting the engine.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise or reset certain systems, such as:

- the key with remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the sunroof and its electric blind,
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the preset radio stations.

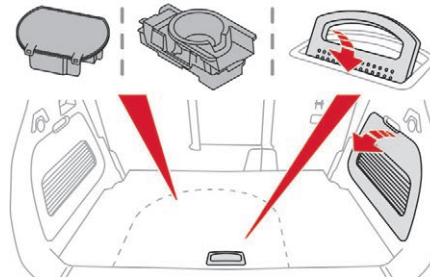
i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

Access to the tools

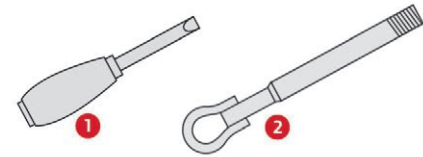


The tools are located in the boot. Depending on version, they are either under the floor or behind the removable grille of the right-hand compartment.

To gain access to them:

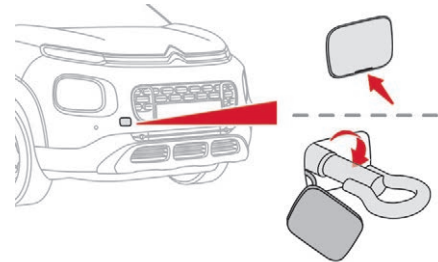
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ then, depending on version, lift the floor using the grip, remove it and remove the carpet.
- ☞ or, open the removable grille to the right by pulling from the top.

List of tools



1. Flat blade screwdriver.
Allows the cover plate on the front or rear bumper to be opened to screw in the removable towing eye 1.
2. Removable towing eye.

Towing your vehicle



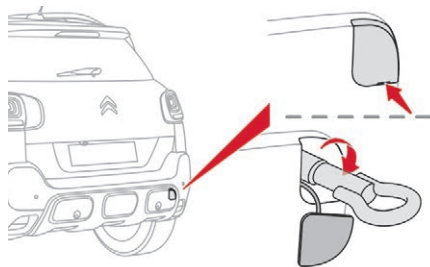
- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover from below using the flat blade screwdriver 1.
- ☞ Screw in the towing eye 2, until it tightens fully.

- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector into position **N**.

! Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- ☞ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover from below using the flat blade screwdriver **1**.
- ☞ Screw in the towing eye **2**, until it tightens fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or main road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar available.

Characteristics of engines and towed loads

Engines

The engine specifications (capacity, max. power, max. speed, energy, CO₂ emissions, etc.) associated with your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These characteristics correspond to the values type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also shown on the manufacturer's nameplate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW values and the towable loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towable load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towbar.

GTW: Gross train weight.

! High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads – PETROL

Engine	PureTech 82	PureTech 110 S&S		PureTech 110	PureTech 130 S&S
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)	Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)	Manual 6-speed (BVM6)
Code	EB2F	EB2DT		EB2DTM	EB2DTS
Model codes	HMZB/R1B	HNZB/R1B	HNZW/R1B	HNVW/R1	HNYH/R1B
Capacity (cm ³)	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	60	81	81	81	95
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	650	840	840	840	840
Unbraked trailer (kg)	560	600	600	600	620
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	50	50	50	50	50

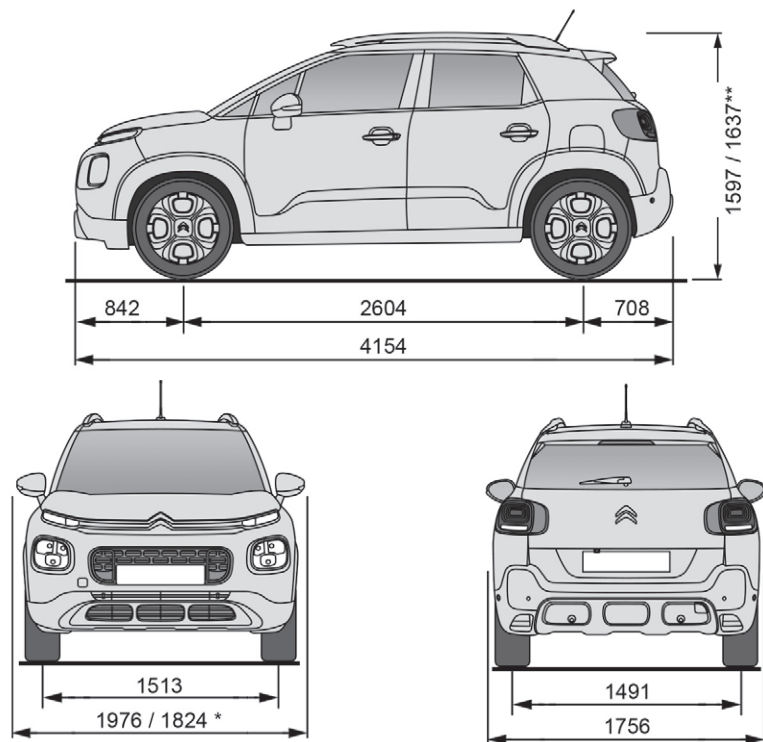
Engines and towed loads – DIESEL

Engine	HDi 92	BlueHDi 100	BlueHDi 100 S&S	BlueHDi 120/115 S&S	
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 6-speed (BVM6)	
Code	DV6D	DV6FD	DV6FD	DV6FC	
Model codes	9HPA/R2A	BHYB/R2A	BHYB/R2B	BHZH/R2B	BHXH/R2B*
Capacity (cm ³)	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	68	73	73	88	85
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	840	840	840	870	870
Unbraked trailer (kg)	610	620	620	640	640
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	50	50	50	50	50

* For Belgium.

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

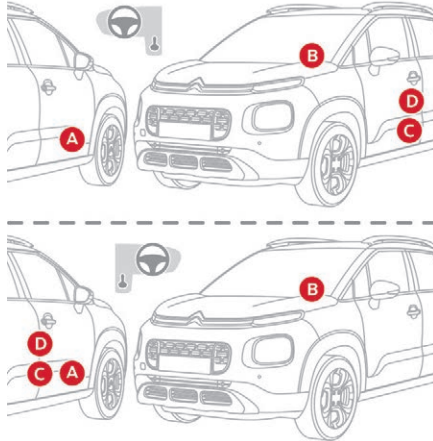


* Mirrors folded.

** Version with longitudinal bars.

Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) on the front right seat floor

The number is engraved on the body structure.

B. Vehicle identification number (VIN) on the dashboard

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label

This tamperproof label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the gross vehicle weight (GVW),
- the maximum authorised train weight (GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres label

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information about the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unloaded and loaded,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Checking tyre pressures

The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.

The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

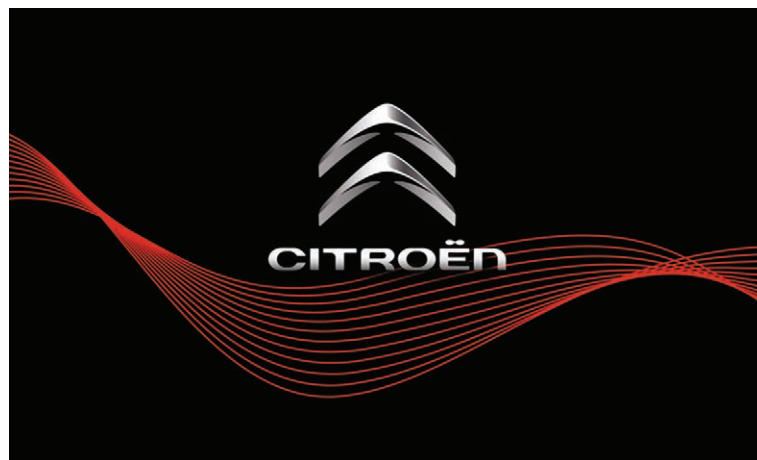
! Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.



Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.



CITROËN Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	3
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	13
Applications	16
Radio	21
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	22
Media	23
Telephone	25
Settings	29
Frequently asked questions	32

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

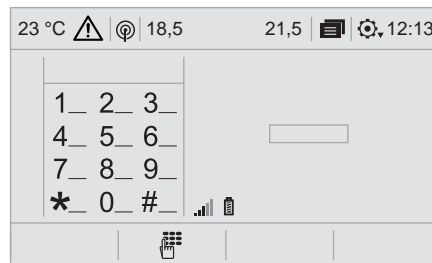
You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

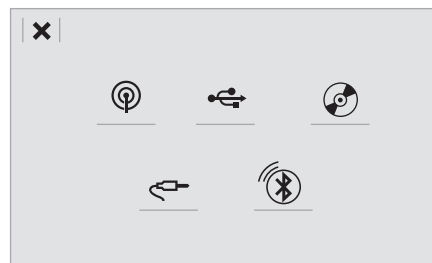
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth* and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).



* Depending on equipment

i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place after the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

Steering mounted controls

Depending on model.




Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).


Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

 Increase volume.

or



 Mute/Restore the sound.
Or

or



Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

 Decrease volume.

or





SRC  **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

 **Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
OK  **Short press:** confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio:** display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

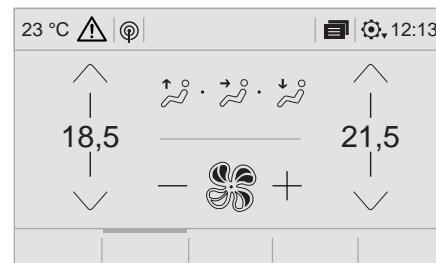
Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

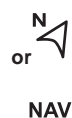
Air conditioning



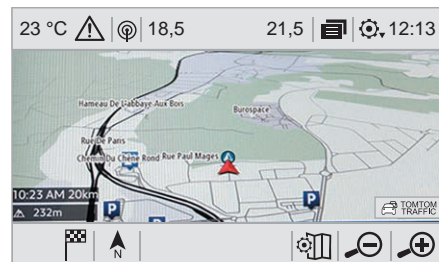
Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.



Connected navigation



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination. Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

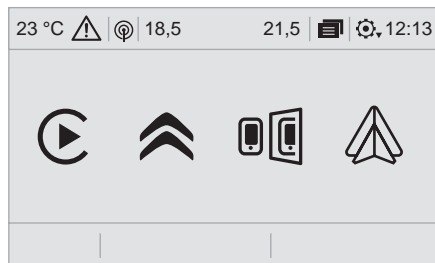


Applications



APPS

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto. Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

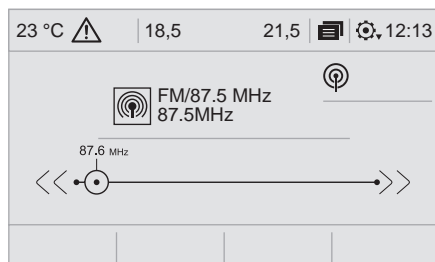


Radio Media

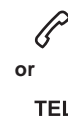


Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

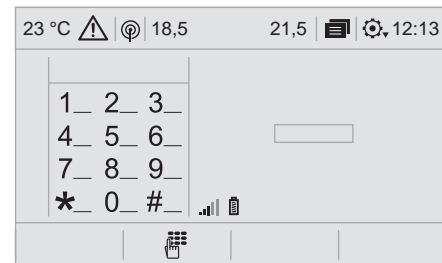
or
MEDIA



Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

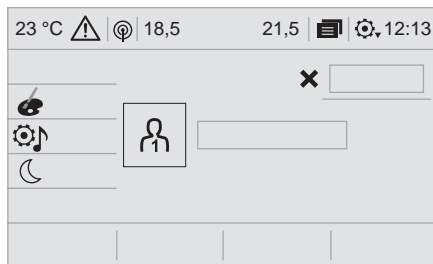


Configuration



SETUP

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



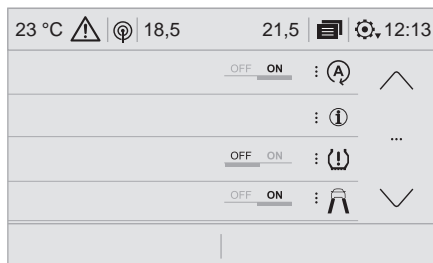
Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

DRIVE



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.



To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address, 11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist, Madonna".

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller".



The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...

The voice commands in Arabic for:

"Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city" are not available.



Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk voice control button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.



Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands



i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

i Depending on country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing".
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" or "listen to" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

i Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

i If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Send text to <...>	<p>To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.</p> <p>Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".</p>
Listen to most recent message*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Enter address"**.



Select the **"Country"**.



Enter the **"City"**, the **"Street"** and the **"Number"** and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK

Press **"OK"** to select the **"Guidance criteria"**.


And/Or





Select **"See on map"** to select the **"Guidance criteria"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start navigation.

 Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

 In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the **"City"**, the **"Street"** and the **"Number"** on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in **"Contact"** or in the **"History"** of addresses.

 Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.




Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Recent"** tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the **"Guidance criteria"**.

OK Press **"OK"** to start navigation.

 Select **"Position"** to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Preferred"** tab.



Select **"My home"**.

Or



Select **"My work"**.

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Contact"** tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Points of interest"**.



Select the **"Travel"**, or **"Leisure"** or **"Commercial"** or **"Public"** or **"Geographic"** tab.

Or



Select **"Search"** to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

i A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



or

NAV

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.

The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).



Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services will be made available.



The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
 - Filling stations,
 - Car parks,
 - Traffic,
 - POI local search.
- A Danger zone pack (option).



The principles and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation



In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



or

NAV

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.

Select **"Map"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Authorise sending information"**

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.



Activate or deactivate **"Warn of danger zones"**.



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**



For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: **"Authorise sending information"**.



The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"



To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.



or

NAV



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"Declare a new danger zone"** button located in the upper bar of the touch screen



Select the option **"Type"** to choose the type of "danger zone".



Select the **"Speed"** option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press **"OK"** to save and distribute the information.

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"System settings/ administration"**.



Select the **"System info"** tab.



Select **"View"** to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select **"Update(s) due"**.



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

i The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

i Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

TEL

Press on **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

APPS

Press **"Connectivity"** to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

As the principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



The **MirrorLink™** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **MirrorLink™** function.

OK

In the process, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

As the principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK

In the process, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menu by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

i There may be a waiting time for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth® connection

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

i The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Connect-App / Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"** or **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the **"Key"** for the Wi-Fi network and the **"Password"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Connect-App / Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/OR

Select the **"Settings"** to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Manage connections



Press **Connect-App / Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Manage connection"**.

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.

First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio



Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



or

MEDIA



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM tracking



"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



or

MEDIA

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK

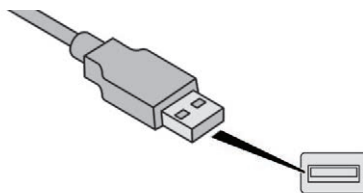
Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("DAB-FM" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

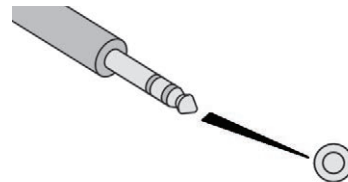
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(Depending on model/Depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(Depending on model/Depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.



The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice



The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " ?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.

Or



Select **"Search"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

i Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the bin at top right of the screen to display a bin alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the bin alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



or

TEL



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



or

TEL

Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



or

TEL

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system. Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.



Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.



The audio settings **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".



Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.



The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.



Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.



Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OKPress "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OKPress "**OK**" to confirm.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUPSelect "**Colour schemes**".Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
---	--	---

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new key, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

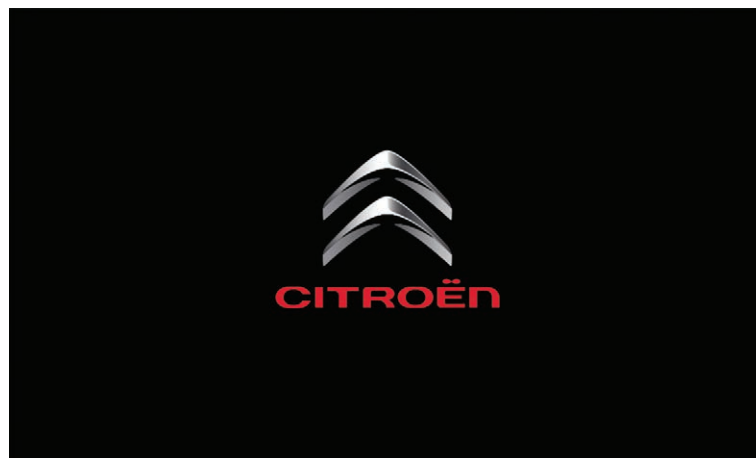
Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

CITROËN Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	8
Media	9
Telephone	11
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

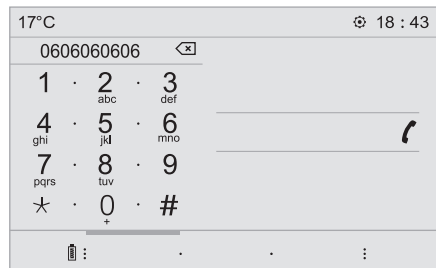
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth* and Bluetooth* multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Depending on model.



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



or



Increase volume.



or



Mute/Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

 Decrease volume.


or



SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

or **SRC** **Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

 **Radio** (rotate): previous/next preset.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

or



Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

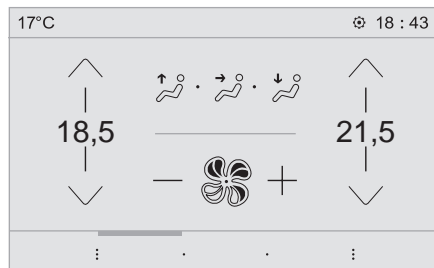
Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

Air conditioning



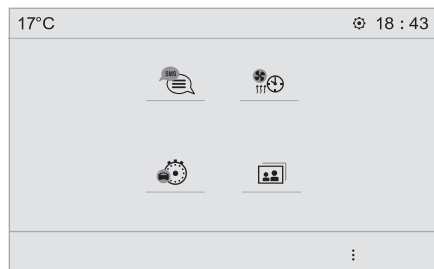
Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications



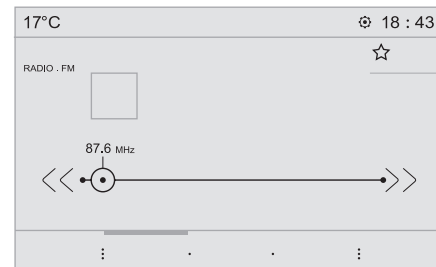
Access configurable equipment.



Radio Media



Select an audio source or radio station.



Telephone



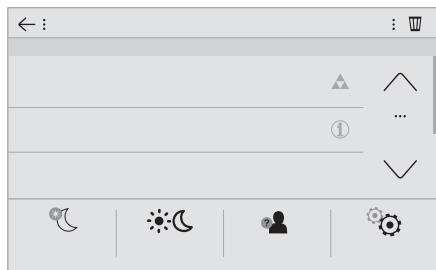
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving



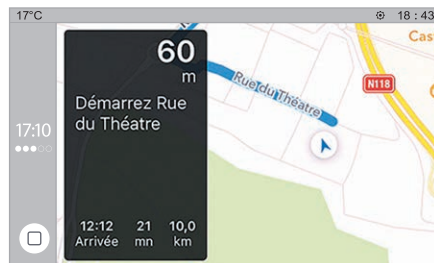
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation



Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: ".tiff", ".gif", ".jpg/jpeg", ".bmp", ".png".



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for a contact.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey area to confirm.

i The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**News**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Sound**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

i In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

i Onboard audio: the Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Waveband**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".



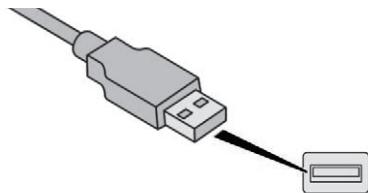
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

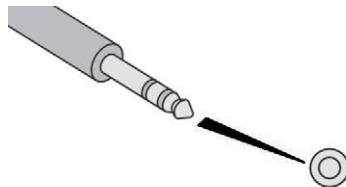
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(Depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First, adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " "?:; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"Android Auto"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.



On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

Automatic reconnection

To modify the connection profile:



Press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Internet data"**.



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the bin at the top right of the screen to display a bin alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the bin alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings Profile settings



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjusting brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK


Press "**OK**" to save the time.




Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

 Press the back arrow to save the settings.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Configuration"** to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Date and time"**.

Select **"Date"**.



Press on this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

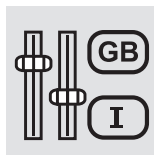
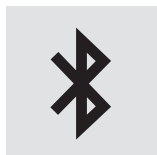
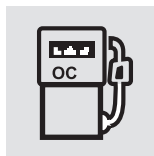
Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.

Bluetooth® audio system



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	6
Media	7
Telephone	10
Frequently asked questions	14

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

! Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or a qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

i To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.



Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation/Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.



Confirm or display contextual menu.



Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.



Radio:
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.



Radio:
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).



Access to the main menu.



Activate/Deactivate TA (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.



Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

LIST**Radio:**

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

SRC /**Other than telephone call:**

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2

**MENU**

Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound.



Decrease volume.

SRC /**Other than telephone call:**

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.



Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST**Radio:**

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.



"Telephone": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.



"Trip computer".



"Maintenance": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.



"Connections": Manage connections, search for devices.



"Personalisation-configuration":

Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU

Press the **"MENU"** button.



Move from one menu to another.



Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND

Press this button to select a waveband (FM/AM/DAB).



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up/down for radio frequencies.

LIST

Press this button to display the list of stations received locally. To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

i The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

i If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

! The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In **"Radio"** mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀▶ Select **"Audio functions"**.

OK Press **OK**.

◀▶ Select the **"FM waveband preferences"** function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀▶ Select **"Frequency tracking (RDS)"**.

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Receiving TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

! Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

i The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

i Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

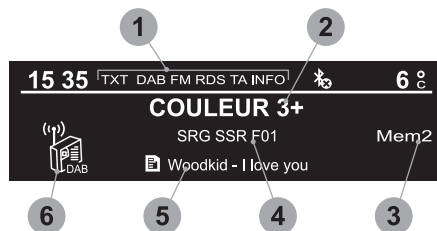
OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ Select **"RadioText (TXT) display"** and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Depending on version

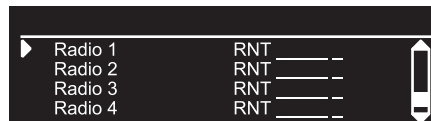
i If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



- Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
- Display of the name of the current station.

- Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.
- Display the name of the multiplex service being used, also called "ensemble".
- Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.
- Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

i When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

i Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

▲▼ Starting of a search for the previous/next "multiplex service".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

i When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **"OK"** to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.).

DAB/FM station tracking

i "DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).

When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

i If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

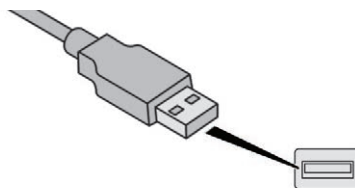
◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

▲ ▼ Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

! If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal:** the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random:** the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media:** all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.

- **Repeat:** the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.
▼

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track.

▲ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next folder.
▼

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Select by "**Folder**"/"**Artist**"/"**Genre**"/"**Playlist**".

Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

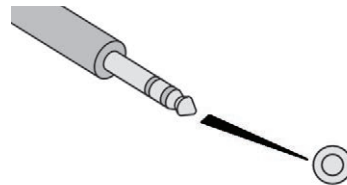


Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next "**Folder**"/"**Artist**"/"**Genre**"/"**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(Depending on model/depending on equipment)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

! Do not connect a device to both the auxiliary Jack socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

! External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC // To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

◀▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀▶▶▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player. The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played. The folder structure is not observed during playback. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC // To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

▲▼ Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

◀▶▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

◀▶▶▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).

SRC // Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE**.
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen. If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav" and ".aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Search for a device**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.

A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.



Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Manage connections



The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Indicates that a device is connected.



A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:

- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.



Indicates connection of the audio streaming profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.



Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Then select and confirm:

- **"Connect telephone"/**
"Disconnect telephone":
to connect/disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- **"Connect media player"/**
"Disconnect media player":
to connect/disconnect streaming only.
- **"Connect telephone + media player"/"Disconnect telephone + media player":**
to connect/disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- **"Delete connection":** to delete the pairing.



When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the **"YES"** tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

SRC //

Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"Call"**.

Select **"Dial"**.

Or

Select **"Directory"**.

Or

Select **"Calls list"**.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

SRC //

Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"End call"**.

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC //

During a call, press one of the buttons for more than two seconds.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ In the contextual menu, select
▼ "Hang up" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the other person cannot hear)

▲ In the contextual menu:
▼ - select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone/combined mode

▲ In the contextual menu:
▼ - select "**Telephone/combined mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone/combined mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

In some cases, the telephone/combined mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ From the contextual menu, select
▼ "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Consultation call

▲ From the contextual menu, select
▼ "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Directory

▲ To access the directory, press and
▼ hold **SRC/PHONE**.

▲ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of
▼ contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

MENU

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select **"Telephone"** and confirm.

Select **"Directory management"** and confirm.

You can:

- **"Consult an entry"**,
- **"Delete an entry"**,
- **"Delete all entries"**.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.

i Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or the CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system and of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

180° rear vision154-155

A

Accessories90, 123
 Active Safety Brake14, 142-145
 AdBlue®18, 28-29, 180-182
 Adjusting headlamps85
 Adjusting head restraints59
 Adjusting seats57-58
 Adjusting the air distribution66-69
 Adjusting the air flow66-69
 Adjusting the date32-33, 40, 31, 18
 Adjusting the height and reach
 of the steering wheel62
 Adjusting the seat belt height98
 Adjusting the temperature66-69
 Adjusting the time32-33, 40, 31, 17
 Advice on driving118-119
 Airbags102, 106
 Airbags, curtain103-104
 Airbags, front102-104, 107
 Airbags, lateral103-104
 Air conditioning67-69
 Air conditioning, automatic65, 67-69
 Air conditioning, manual65-67
 Air intake66-69
 Air vents64-65
 Alarm51-52
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS)93
 Anti-slip regulation (ASR)93
 Apple CarPlay connection16, 12
 Armrest, front71, 74
 Armrest, rear75
 Assistance, emergency braking93, 144
 Assistance call91-92
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth)24, 9, 9

B

Battery172, 178, 202, 204
 Battery, charging203-204
 Battery, remote control45-46
 Blind53
 Blinds, side75
 Blind spot monitoring system21, 149-150
 BlueHDI28-29, 180, 184
 Bluetooth (hands-free)25-26, 13-14, 10-11
 Bluetooth (telephone)25-27, 13-15
 Bonnet174-175
 Boot48-49, 70
 Brake discs180
 Brake lamps195
 Brakes12, 180
 Braking, automatic emergency14, 142-145
 Brightness16
 Bulbs (changing)193, 195

C

Cable, audio23, 9
 Cable, Jack23, 9
 Cap, fuel filler166-167
 Capacity, fuel tank166-167
 CD, MP323-24, 9, 9
 Central locking43-44, 49
 Changing a bulb193, 195-197
 Changing a fuse197-201
 Changing a wheel185, 188-190
 Changing a wiper blade88, 173
 Changing the remote control battery46
 Charger, wireless72-73
 Checking the engine oil level28
 Checking the levels176-178
 Checking tyre pressures
 (using the kit)184-185, 187
 Checks175, 178-180
 Checks, routine178-180
 Child lock117

Children111-115
 Children (safety)117
 Child seats101, 105-106, 110-111, 116
 Child seats, conventional110-111
 Child seats, i-Size115
 Child seats, ISOFIX112-115
 CITROËN Connect Nav1
 CITROËN Connect Radio1
 Closing the boot42, 48-49
 Closing the doors42-44, 48
 Coat hanger74
 Collision risk alert144-145
 Configuration, vehicle32-36
 Connection, Bluetooth19, 25-27, 13-15, 11
 Connection, MirrorLink17, 11-12
 Connection, Wi-Fi network20
 Control, back-up boot release49
 Control, back-up door45-46
 Control, electric windows55-56
 Control, heated seats59-60
 Control stalk, lighting22-23, 80, 82
 Control stalk, wipers86-89
 Courtesy lamps78, 196-197
 Cruise control133-134, 136-137, 139-142
 Cruise control by speed limit
 recognition136-137
 Cup holder71, 75

D

DAB (Digital Audio
 Broadcasting) – Digital radio22, 8, 6-7
 Date (setting)32-33, 40, 31, 18
 Daytime running lamps80, 82, 193-194
 Daytime running lamps, LED194
 Deactivating the passenger
 airbag102-103, 106-107
 Deactivation of ASR94
 Deadlocking42, 44

Defrosting.....	70
Defrosting, front.....	69
Demisting, front.....	69
Demisting, rear.....	63
Demisting, rear screen.....	63
Dimensions.....	210
Dipstick.....	28, 176-177
Direction indicators.....	22, 81-82, 193-195
Display, head-up.....	132
Display screen, instrument panel.....	128
Distance alert – Collision Risk Alert.....	143
Doors.....	48
Driver's attention warning.....	146-147
Driving time warning.....	146
Dynamic stability control (DSC).....	15-16, 93-96

E

Earth point, remote.....	175
Economy mode.....	172
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....	93
Electronic stability control (ESC).....	15
Emergency braking assistance (EBA).....	93
Emergency call.....	91-92
Emergency switching off.....	123
Emissions control.....	14
Energy economy mode.....	172
Engine.....	14
Engine, Diesel.....	165, 184
Engine, petrol.....	165, 175
Engine compartment.....	175
Engine fault.....	14
Engines.....	207-209
Engine self-diagnosis.....	14
Environment.....	45

F

Fatigue detection.....	146-147
Filling the fuel tank.....	165-167
Filter, air.....	179
Filter, Diesel fuel.....	176
Filter, oil.....	179
Filter, particle.....	178-179
Filter, passenger compartment.....	179
Fitting a wheel.....	190-192
Fitting roof bars.....	173-174
Fittings, boot.....	76
Fittings, interior.....	71, 75
Fittings, rear.....	75
Flap, fuel filler.....	166-167
Floor, boot, adjustable.....	77
Foglamp, rear.....	21, 81
Foglamps, front.....	23, 80-81, 85-86, 193, 195
Foglamps, rear.....	80
Folding the rear seats.....	60-62
Frequency (radio).....	21-22
Fuel.....	165
Fuel tank.....	167
Fusebox, dashboard.....	201
Fusebox, engine compartment.....	201
Fuses.....	197-201

G

Gauge, fuel.....	166-167
Gearbox, automatic.....	125-131, 180
Gearbox, manual.....	71, 124-125, 129-131, 179
Gear lever, manual gearbox.....	124-125
Gear shift indicator – Gear efficiency indicator.....	128
Glove box.....	71
G.P.S.....	12
Grab handles.....	75
Grip control.....	95-96

H

Hazard warning lamps.....	91
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation.....	91
Headlamps, automatic dipping.....	23, 83-85
Headlamps, automatic illumination.....	82-83
Headlamps, dipped beam.....	23, 80, 193-194
Headlamps, main beam.....	23, 80, 193-194
Head restraints, front.....	59
Head restraints, rear.....	60-62
Head-up display.....	132-133
Heating.....	66-67
Hill Assist Descent Control.....	22, 97-98
Hill start assist.....	129
Hooks.....	77
Horn.....	91

I

Ignition.....	69, 121, 123, 28
Immobiliser, electronic.....	45, 119
Indicator, AdBlue® range.....	28-29
Indicator, coolant temperature.....	25
Indicator, engine oil level.....	28
Indicator lamps, operation.....	11
Indicators, direction.....	81, 194
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit).....	184-185, 187
Instrument panel.....	8-10
Instrument panel, matrix.....	9
Internet browser.....	16
ISOFIX mountings.....	112

J

Jack.....	188-190, 23, 9
Jump starting.....	202

K

Key	41, 43-46
Key, electronic	43-44
Keyless Entry and Starting	43, 45, 119, 121-122
Key not recognised	123
Key with remote control	119
Kit, hands-free	25-26, 13-14, 10-11
Kit, temporary puncture repair	184-185, 187

L

Labels, identification	211
Lamp, boot	70, 197
Lamps, parking	82
Lamps, rear	195
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)	148
LEDs – Light-emitting diodes	82, 193
Level, brake fluid	177
Level, Diesel additive	178
Level, engine coolant	25, 177-178
Level, engine oil	28, 176-177
Level, screenwash fluid	178
Levels and checks	175-178
Light-emitting diodes – LEDs	82, 193, 197
Lighting, cornering	86
Lighting, directional	85
Lighting, guide-me home	83
Lighting, interior	78-79
Lighting, mood	79
Lighting, welcome	83
Load reduction mode	172
Locating your vehicle	42
Locking	42, 45
Locking from the inside	49
Low fuel level	166-167

M

Map reading lamps	78
Markings, identification	211
Mat	71, 74
Memorising a speed	133-134
Menu	12
Menu, main	4
Menus (audio)	3-5, 4-5
Messages	28
Messages, quick	28
Mirror, rear view	64
Mirrors, door	63, 149-150
Misfuel prevention	167
Mountings, ISOFIX	112
MP3 CD	9

N

Net, storage	75
Number plate lamps	196

O

Oil, engine	176-177
Oil change	176-177
Oil consumption	176-177
On-board tools	77, 185
Opening the bonnet	174-175
Opening the boot	42-43, 48-49
Opening the doors	42-43, 48

P

Pads, brake	180
Paint colour code	211
Parcel shelf, rear	76
Park Assist	155, 157, 159
Parking brake	124, 180

Parking sensors, front	151
Parking sensors, rear	151
Plates, identification	211
Player, Apple®	24, 10, 10
Player, MP3 CD	23, 9
Player, USB	23, 9, 7
Port, USB	71, 73, 23, 9, 7
Pre-heater, Diesel	21
Pressures, tyres	188, 211
Pre-tensioning seat belts	101
Priming the fuel system	184
Profiles	30, 16
Protecting children	102-103, 105-107, 111-115
Puncture	184-185, 187

R

Radio	21, 24, 6, 9, 4-5
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB)	22, 8, 6
Range, AdBlue	28-29
RDS	21-22, 7
Rear screen, demisting	70
Recharging the battery	203-204
Recirculation, air	66-69
Reduction of electrical load	172
Regeneration of the particle filter	179
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system	162-163
Reinitialising the remote control	47
Reminder, key in ignition	121
Reminder, lighting on	81
Remote control	41-45
Removing a wheel	190-192
Removing the mat	74
Replacing bulbs	193, 195
Replacing fuses	197-201
Replacing the air filter	179
Replacing the oil filter	179

Replacing the passenger compartment filter 179
 Reservoir, screenwash 178
 Resetting the service indicator 28
 Resetting the trip recorder 30-31
 Reversing camera 154-155
 Roof bars 173-174
 Running out of fuel (Diesel) 184

S

Safety, children 102-103, 105-107, 111-115
 SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 180
 Screen, instrument panel 38
 Screen, monochrome 32-33
 Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 4
 Screen menu map 12
 Screenwash, front 88
 Screenwash, rear 87
 Seat belts 98-101, 110
 Seats, front 57-58
 Seats, heated 59-60
 Seats, rear 60-62
 Selector, gear 125-128
 Serial number, vehicle 211
 Service indicator 26, 28
 Servicing 26
 Settings, equipment 31-36
 Settings, system 30, 16
 Sidelamps 80, 82, 193-195
 Side repeater 195
 Snow chains 162, 167-168
 Socket, 12 V accessory 71-72, 76
 Socket, auxiliary 23, 9, 8
 Socket, Jack 23, 9, 8
 Sockets, audio 73
 Speed limiter 133-134, 136-139
 Speed limit recognition 134-135

Stability control (ESC) 15, 93
 Starting a Diesel engine 165
 Starting the engine 120
 Starting the vehicle 118, 120-122, 125-128
 Starting using another battery 123, 202
 Station, radio 21-22, 6, 4
 Stay, bonnet 174-175
 Steering mounted controls, audio 3, 3, 2-3
 Steering wheel, adjustment 62
 STOP (warning lamp) 12
 Stop & Start 22, 39, 66, 69, 129-131, 166, 175, 179, 205
 Stopping the vehicle 118, 120-122, 125-128
 Storage 71, 75
 Storage box 77
 Storage wells 77
 Stowing rings 75
 Sunroof, panoramic 53
 Sun visor 71
 Switching off the engine 120
 Synchronising the remote control 47

T

Tables of fuses 197-201
 Tank, fuel 166-167
 Telephone 72-73, 25-29, 13-16, 10-11, 13
 Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition 14
 Temperature, coolant 25
 Three flashes (direction indicators) 82
 Time (setting) 32-33, 40, 31, 17
 TMC (Traffic info) 13
 Tools 77, 78, 188-189, 188-190
 Total distance recorder 30-31
 Touch screen 33-36, 86, 135, 1, 1
 Towbar 119, 171
 Towbar with quickly detachable towball 168-171

Towed loads 207
 Towing another vehicle 205-206
 Traction control (ASR) 15-16, 93-95
 Traffic information (TA) 5
 Traffic information (TMC) 13
 Trailer 119, 171
 Trip computer 37-39
 Trip distance recorder 30-31
 Tyres 211
 Tyre under-inflation detection 15, 161, 188

U

Under-inflation (detection) 161
 Unlocking 42-43
 Unlocking from the inside 49
 Updating the date 40, 31, 18
 Updating the time 40, 31, 17
 USB 23-24, 9, 7

V

Ventilation 64-67
 Voice commands 5-10

W

Warning and indicator lamps 10-11
 Warning lamp, braking system 12
 Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 21
 Warning lamp, driver's seat
 belt not fastened 99-100
 Warning lamp, low fuel level 17
 Warning lamp, seat belts 99-100
 Warning lamp, Service 20

Warning lamp, STOP	12
Weights	207-209
Wheel, spare	185, 188-190, 211
Window controls	55-56
Windscreen, heated.....	70
Wiper, rear.....	87-88
Wiper blades (changing)	88, 173
Wipers	23-24, 86, 88-89
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....	87-89

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

06-17

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON

www.citroen.com

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. NANTERRE : 642 050 199



